

Copyright 2019, Rick Neifeld. All rights reserved. Last revised: March 6, 2021 (11:06pm)

LAW REGARDING PATENTS

A PDF Searchable Reference Work

By Rick Neifeld, Ph.D., J.D., Patent Attorney

Copyright 2019, Rick Neifeld. All rights reserved. Last revised: March 6, 2021 (11:06pm)

Preface: This pdf searchable work is organized in sections for authorities relating to United States patent law. Within each section, for each authority, are relevant case law excerpts. The purpose for this organization is to allow the user to rapidly locate, understand, and apply law relevant to a topic. The authorities are organized in the following sequence: United States constitution; generally applicable legal doctrines; international patent law; federal rules (of evidence and procedure); United States Code (USC; organized sequentially by title number, part, chapter, subchapter, and code section); and state law. The USC authorities include text from selected sections for USC volumes: 5; 7; 9; 11; 15; 17; 18; 19; 21; 28; 35; and 42. Immediately following the section for 35 USC, there is a section for the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) volume 37 part 42. Throughout this work, subheadings are designed to identify the relevant legal issue to which they relate. The table of contents (TOC) exceeds 100 pages. Each entry in the TOC includes a hyperlink to the corresponding content.

Disclaimer, hold harmless: This work is not legal advice. You should retain competent legal counsel before proceeding in any legal matter, including legal matters relating to patents. There may be mis-cites, out of date excerpts, errors, and omissions. You assume the risk and hold me harmless for any loss you incur, by relying upon this work.

Formatting: Case law excerpts are generally presented in this work in block quote format. Each block quote contains a citation in brackets at the end of the block quote, and the case name in the citation is underlined. Symbols “...” and “****” in case law excerpts indicate excluded text. Some case citations include the court case docket number and day, month, and year of decision. Some excerpts do not faithfully reproduce emphasis in the original, for example excluding italics, or including underlining of case names instead of italics.

Version: There is a header containing “Last revised:” followed by a date. This date indicates the version of your copy of this work.

Authorized use and copies: By purchasing a copy of this work, see

<https://lawregardingpatents.com/>, you are authorized to have only one copy of this work open at any time, and you are authorized to store any number of backup copies. You are not entitled to future updates of this work. You are not authorized to sell any copy or any portion of any copy of this work. You are not authorized to post any copy or any portion of any copy of this work for download. You are not authorized to send any copy or any portion of any copy of this work to anyone.

Request for feedback: I would be grateful if you provided me feedback, identifying errors, suggesting additions or revisions, and the like, using the form at this URL:

https://docs.google.com/forms/d/e/1FAIpQLSduCe_gdEqAsSILPJlWlqVVSpaSL2wWfwM6MAfOCLv1eo0bAg/viewform?usp=sf_link

TABLE OF CONTENTS

The Constitution of the United States of America.	Book Page 1
Article I - Congress.	Book Page 1
Article II - The President.	Book Page 5
Article III - The Courts.. . . .	Book Page 7
Article IV - The States, Territories, and Properties.	Book Page 8
Article V - Amendments to the Constitution.	Book Page 8
Article VI - Supremacy of Federal Law.	Book Page 9
Article VII - Ratification of the Constitution	Book Page 9
Amendments I-X - The Bill of Rights.	Book Page 9
Amendments XI-XXVII.. . . .	Book Page 10
Constitutional Case Law.	Book Page 15
Constitution, Article I, section 8, “department”	Book Page 15
Constitution, Article II, Executive Power Case Law.	Book Page 16
Constitution, Article II, Section II, Appointments Clause.	Book Page 16
Constitution Article II, § 3, Take Care Clause.	Book Page 19
Constitution Article III, Judicial Power Case Law.	Book Page 19
Public rights doctrine.	Book Page 19
Patents are public franchises, not property.	Book Page 20
Article III, section 2, judicial power, treaties.	Book Page 21
Article III Standing.	Book Page 21
General test for Article III standing.	Book Page 21
Qui tam definition.	Book Page 22
Qui tam standing.	Book Page 22
“Statutory standing” and a court’s power to adjudicate.	Book Page 23
Article III standing required to appeal from an administrative agency decision.. . . .	Book Page 24
Standing to appeal, appellant has burden to show Article III standing to appeal	Book Page 25
Standing to appeal, reduced standards for showing redressability and immediacy, when appeal is based upon a statutory right.	Book Page 25
Establishing injury in an appeal from a final decision in an IPR proceeding.	Book Page 25
Standing to appeal, only party invoking judicial review must have standing.	Book Page 26
Standing, required for an appeal from a final agency action.	Book Page 27
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, standards	Book Page 27
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, burden of production.	Book Page 27
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, evidentiary showings.	Book Page 28
Standing to appeal, burden of production to show standing.	Book Page 28
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, timing of showings.	Book Page 29
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, relaxed standard on timing of showings	Book Page 29

Standing to appeal from a final agency action, required showings.....	Book Page 30
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, injury in fact requirement.	Book Page 30
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, injury in fact, imminent harm. . .	Book Page 30
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, injury in fact, statutory estoppel factor	Book Page 31
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, injury in fact, competitor standing doctrine	Book Page 33
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, sufficient immediacy and reality	Book Page 34
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, injury in fact, ANDA approval blocked by challenged patent.	Book Page 36
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, injury in fact, increase in royalties resulting from invalidation of the challenged patent.	Book Page 37
Standing to appeal from a final agency action, injury in fact, speculative harm insufficient	Book Page 38
Standing to appeal, mootness doctrine.	Book Page 38
Mootness, burden of proof.	Book Page 39
Mootness, is an Article III limitation on court jurisdiction.....	Book Page 39
Mootness, appellate court has discretion to dismiss a case that becomes moot after its decision and during the time to seek certiorari..	Book Page 39
Mootness, of pending appeal from ITC decision after patent expired.	Book Page 40
Mootness, qualified tender of covenant not to sue does not moot.	Book Page 40
Mootness, affirmance on appeal of unpatentability of patent claims in another proceeding based upon the same prior art moots appeal of patentability issue.	Book Page 41
Mootness, affirmance on appeal from a civil action, of lack of patent eligibility of patent claims challenged in a PTAB proceeding, moots appeal of patentability issue for those claims	Book Page 41
Mootness, exception, capable of repetition, yet evading review..	Book Page 41
Standing, ownership of asserted right.	Book Page 42
Standing, corporation must exist at time of rights transfer.	Book Page 42
Standing, corporate name change does not affect standing.	Book Page 43
Standing to sue, injury in fact that is redressable.	Book Page 43
Standing to sue, qui tam injury.	Book Page 44
Constitution, Article VI, Supremacy Case Law.....	Book Page 44
Preemption.	Book Page 44
Field preemption.	Book Page 45
Conflict preemption.	Book Page 45
Fifth Amendment - Privilege against self-incrimination.	Book Page 46
Fifth and Fourteenth Amendments - "due process of law".	Book Page 46
Due process, three factor test.	Book Page 46
Due process, opportunity to defend..	Book Page 47
Due process, patent rights.	Book Page 47

Constitutional questions raised by an IPR final written decision can only be reviewed in an appeal to the Federal Circuit. [Book Page 49](#)

Facts supporting constitutional challenges to an IPR final written decision must be adduced during the IPR proceeding. [Book Page 49](#)

Fifth Amendment, takings clause. [Book Page 50](#)

The Takings Clause does not prevent changes in law from apply to pending lawsuits
. [Book Page 50](#)

The Takings Clause does not apply to patent rights. [Book Page 50](#)

Seventh Amendment, right to a jury trial. [Book Page 51](#)

Seventh Amendment, applies to “suits at common law”. [Book Page 51](#)

Seventh Amendment, legal remedy requires a jury trial on demand. [Book Page 51](#)

Seventh Amendment, whether a statutory cause of action involves only legal rights and remedies. [Book Page 51](#)

Seventh Amendment, scope of suits encompassed. [Book Page 52](#)

Seventh Amendment, test for applicability. [Book Page 52](#)

Seventh Amendment, applicability to non-Article III courts. [Book Page 53](#)

Seventh Amendment, limits on trial bifurcation. [Book Page 53](#)

Seventh Amendment, inter partes review. [Book Page 54](#)

Seventh Amendment, for patent infringement, disgorgement of profits. [Book Page 54](#)

Seventh Amendment, for patent infringement, compensatory relief for past patent infringing activity. [Book Page 55](#)

Tenth Amendment - Limitation on powers of the United States. [Book Page 55](#)

Eleventh Amendment - Judicial power of the United States. [Book Page 55](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, patent infringement. [Book Page 55](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, prevents involuntary joinder of State instrumentality
. [Book Page 56](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, does not prevent findings of State infringement in suits between private parties. [Book Page 57](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, waiver of immunity. [Book Page 57](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, extent of waiver includes defenses and counterclaims
. [Book Page 58](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, requirements for finding waiver. [Book Page 58](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, waiver, participation in activities controlled by federal statute
. [Book Page 59](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, extension to state instrumentalities, factors. [Book Page 59](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, Unavailable in PTAB AIA Proceedings. [Book Page 59](#)

State Sovereign Immunity, waiver, PTAB AIA Proceedings. [Book Page 60](#)

Indian Nation Sovereign Immunity. [Book Page 60](#)

Indian Nation Sovereign Immunity, Inapplicable to IPRs. [Book Page 61](#)

Fourteenth Amendment, Section 5, Congressional legislative power. [Book Page 62](#)

Generally Applicable Legal Doctrines. [Book Page 62](#)

Statutory construction.	Book Page 62
Statutory construction, objective, to give effect to the intent of Congress.	Book Page 62
Statutory construction, is a pure question of law.	Book Page 62
Statutory construction, begins with the language of the statute itself.	Book Page 63
Statutory construction, rules and policies applied.	Book Page 64
Statutory construction, plain meaning governs, unless contrary to legislative intent	Book Page 64
Statutory construction, policy of avoiding unconstitutionality.	Book Page 65
Statutory construction, policy of avoiding conflicts.	Book Page 65
Statutory construction, United States Code’s intrinsic rules of construction.	Book Page 65
Statutory construction, Congressional intent, language rejected by Congress.	Book Page 66
Statutory construction, title and headings are tools available for the resolution of a doubt about meaning.	Book Page 66
Statutory construction, <i>ejusdem generis</i> , reference to things of the same kind as those specified.	Book Page 67
Statutory construction, <i>inclusio unius est exclusio alterius</i> , applies when listed members are an associated group or a series.	Book Page 67
Statutory construction, normally the specific governs the general.	Book Page 68
Statutory construction, <i>noscitur a sociis</i> , clarity resulted from associated words	Book Page 68
Statutory construction, canon against superfluity.	Book Page 68
Statutory construction, in light of the contemporary legal context.	Book Page 69
Statutory construction, common law term comes with its common law meaning	Book Page 70
Statutory construction, common usage and understanding.	Book Page 70
Statutory construction, presumption against statutory abrogation of common law right	Book Page 70
Statutory construction, least disruptive statutory construction.	Book Page 71
Statutory construction, place of words in the overall statutory scheme.	Book Page 72
Statutory construction, legislation with knowledge of judicial interpretation.	Book Page 72
Statutory construction, presumption against changes in fundamental legal precepts	Book Page 72
Statutory construction, presumption against extraterritoriality.	Book Page 73
Statutory construction, test for extraterritoriality of a statute.	Book Page 73
Statutory construction, longstanding administrative construction.	Book Page 74
Statutory construction, review of agency construction.	Book Page 74
Statutory construction, review of agency construction, <i>Chevron</i> and <i>Skidmore</i> deference	Book Page 74
<i>Chevron</i> deference.	Book Page 74
<i>Chevron</i> , contemporaneous agency construction of a statute given “particular weight”	Book Page 76
<i>Skidmore</i> deference.	Book Page 76

Statutory construction, expressly stated filing deadlines.	Book Page 76
Statutory construction, of patent treaties.	Book Page 77
Statutory construction, of particular terms.	Book Page 78
Terms “prior to”; “before”; “on or before”.	Book Page 78
Terms "under", "pursuant" and "in compliance with".	Book Page 78
Term “patented invention”.	Book Page 78
Term “not an”.	Book Page 79
Terms “under”; “described in”; “prescribed by”.	Book Page 79
Term “filed”.	Book Page 80
Term “properly filed,” compliance with the applicable laws and rules governing filings	Book Page 80
Term “properly filed” requires the filing be timely, that is within any specified time limit	Book Page 81
Regulatory construction, general rule.	Book Page 82
Regulatory construction, review of agency interpretation of agency regulatory.	Book Page 82
Regulatory construction, <i>Auer</i> deference.	Book Page 83
Regulatory construction, limitations on <i>Auer</i> deference.	Book Page 83
Regulatory construction, impact of changes in agency interpretation on <i>Auer</i> deference	Book Page 83
Regulatory construction, reasons to withhold <i>Auer</i> deference.	Book Page 84
<i>Stare decisis</i>	Book Page 85
Review court is not bound by stare decisis on earlier statutory construction that relied upon <i>Chevron</i> deference, and agency interpretation has since changed.	Book Page 86
Law of the case doctrine.	Book Page 87
The <i>Accardi</i> doctrine - Rules promulgated by an agency are controlling upon that agency	Book Page 87
<i>Chenery</i> doctrine - Review of agency action limited to grounds embraced in the agency’s decision.	Book Page 91
Appellate court should uphold correct result on new legal ground not relied upon by an agency, so long as the new legal ground relies upon facts determined by the agency and the result is correct.	Book Page 91
Federal Preemption.	Book Page 92
<i>Erie</i> doctrine.	Book Page 93
Ripeness doctrine.	Book Page 94
Res judicata (claim preclusion and issue preclusion).	Book Page 94
Res judicata, scope of preclusion.	Book Page 95
Res judicata, federal common law.	Book Page 95
Res judicata - claim preclusion.	Book Page 96
Claim preclusion, meaning of “claim”.	Book Page 96
Estoppel in pais (equitable estoppel).	Book Page 98
Claim preclusion, preclusive effect of judgment can only be decided in the later case	Book Page 98

Res judicata, <i>Kessler</i> doctrine.....	Book Page 99
<i>Kessler</i> doctrine extended to customers of the manufacturer.....	Book Page 100
<i>Kessler</i> doctrine extended to dismissals with prejudice.....	Book Page 101
Res judicata, applied to changed circumstances.....	Book Page 101
Res judicata of ex parte Board decisions.....	Book Page 101
Res judicata - issue preclusion.....	Book Page 102
Offensive and defensive collateral estoppel.....	Book Page 103
Issue preclusion resulting from an agency judgement.....	Book Page 103
Factors leading to exceptions from issue preclusion	
.....	Book Page 103
No issue preclusion on a consent judgement.....	Book Page 106
Non-party preclusion.....	Book Page 106
Claim preclusion, patent cases, matter of Federal Circuit law.....	Book Page 108
Claim preclusion, patent infringement, issue of law.....	Book Page 108
Claim preclusion, patent cases, scope of cause of action.....	Book Page 108
Claim preclusion, same patent, subsequent suit.....	Book Page 108
Claim preclusion, different patent, subsequent suit.....	Book Page 109
ITC decisions in patent and trademark matters lack preclusive effect.....	Book Page 110
Res judicata, finality.....	Book Page 110
Exhaustion of administrative remedies.....	Book Page 113
Assignment of sovereign interest.....	Book Page 115
Claim accrual and tolling of statute of limitations.....	Book Page 115
Equitable tolling.....	Book Page 115
Retroactive applicability of a new rule of federal law.....	Book Page 117
Retroactive applicability of a new rule of federal law on remedies.....	Book Page 117
Retroactivity, application of IPR proceedings to patents issued after enactment of the AIA raise no constitutional issue.....	Book Page 118
Retroactivity, application of IPR proceedings to patents issued prior to the AIA raise no constitutional issue.....	Book Page 119
Retroactivity limited to cases pending on direct review.....	Book Page 119
Retroactivity required by agency in pending cases.....	Book Page 120
General duty of candor to the Court.....	Book Page 121
Candor duty to notify a court of the existence of concurrent IPRs.....	Book Page 123
The mandate rule.....	Book Page 124
<i>Forum non conveniens</i> doctrine.....	Book Page 125
Legal Malpractice.....	Book Page 126
Negligence elements.....	Book Page 126
Professional negligence elements.....	Book Page 126
Malpractice, standard of care.....	Book Page 126
Client is usually bound by the actions of his attorney.....	Book Page 127
Inherent Court Powers.....	Book Page 128
Federal court inherent power to sanction abuse of judicial process.....	Book Page 128

Misconduct fee awards pursuant to civil procedures must be compensatory. . .	Book Page 129
District court duty, discretion, and standard of review for misconduct fee awards	Book Page 130
Jury common knowledge exception to requirement for evidence.	Book Page 131
Conflicts of interest for concurrent clients, model rule of professional conduct 1.7(a)	Book Page 131
The American Rule (which party pays attorneys fees).	Book Page 132
Prudential standing requirements.	Book Page 133
Prudential standing, zone of interests limitation.	Book Page 134
Prudential standing, zone of interests limitation, APA actions.	Book Page 135
Prudential standing, proximate cause limitation.	Book Page 135
Forfeiture.	Book Page 136
Waiver.	Book Page 136
International Patent Law.	Book Page 137
States.	Book Page 137
The Paris Convention, per se, is the US national law for purposes of construing “any person” in Article 87(1) EPC.	Book Page 138
International treaties contemplate the independence of national patentability requirements and adjudications.	Book Page 138
TRIPS is not self-executing.	Book Page 139
Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property (Paris).	Book Page 140
Paris Article 1 - Establishment of the Union; Scope of Industrial Property.	Book Page 140
Paris Article 2 - National Treatment for Nationals of Countries of the Union. . . .	Book Page 140
Paris Article 3 - Same Treatment for Certain Categories of Persons as for Nationals of Countries of the Union.	Book Page 140
Paris Article 4A.(1) - (The Right of Priority, ROP).	Book Page 141
Paris Article 4A.(1), “any person,” the EPO’s construction of “any person,” means the person that performed the act of filing the application, regardless of right to do so.	Book Page 141
Paris Article 4A.(1), “or” is exclusive, and the ROP can be alienated.	Book Page 141
Paris Article 4(A)(1), construction, “or,” original applicant loses the ROP when transferring title.	Book Page 142
Paris Article 4A.(1), inventors that agreed to assign their invention rights do not enjoy a ROP	Book Page 142
Paris Article 4A.(1), the subsequent application must include all applicants of the first application to enjoy the ROP.	Book Page 143
Paris Article 4A.(1), the priority right must vest in the successor in title prior to the date of the subsequent filing.	Book Page 143
Paris Article 4(A).1, “successor in title,” the EPO conducts a substantial legal assessment to determine whether an entity is a successor in title.	Book Page 145
Paris Article 4(A).1, “successor in title,” United Kingdom construction of “successor in title,”	

the equitable owner retains the ROP after bare legal assignment.	Book Page 145
Paris Article 4A.(1), United Kingdom Construction of “successor in title,” the equitable owner obtains the ROP in the first instance.	Book Page 146
Paris Article 4A.(1),	Book Page 146
Paris Article 4A.(1), Article 87 (1) EPC, an applicant can share his priority right with a third party.	Book Page 147
Paris Article 4A.(1), “successor in title” includes those with equitable title, but not those with bare legal title.	Book Page 147
Paris Article 4A.(1), being a “successor in title” does not necessarily require a written assignment.	Book Page 148
Paris Article 4A.(1), PCT Article 8(b), a PCT application is not a single application for purposes of assessing entitlement to the ROP in a particular state.	Book Page 148
Paris Article 4A.(1), a PCT Rule 26bis priority claim correction cannot cure belated transfer of the ROP.	Book Page 149
Paris Article 4(C)(1)-(3) - (ROP time periods).	Book Page 149
Paris Article 4(C) - (Requirements to restart a priority period).	Book Page 150
Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT)	Book Page 150
PCT Article 1 Establishment of a Union.	Book Page 150
PCT Article 8 Claiming Priority.	Book Page 150
PCT Article 11 Filing Date and Effects of the International Application.	Book Page 151
PCT Article 22 Copy, Translation, and Fee, to Designated Offices.	Book Page 151
FRE 101 Scope; Definitions.	Book Page 153
FRE 102 Purpose.	Book Page 153
Harmless error rule.	Book Page 153
FRE 103 Rulings on Evidence.	Book Page 154
FRE 104 Preliminary Questions.	Book Page 154
FRE 104(a) In General.	Book Page 154
Burden of proof, preponderance of the evidence.	Book Page 154
Regional circuit law - FRE 104(a), admissibility of evidence.	Book Page 155
Second Circuit - FRE 104(a), admissibility of evidence.	Book Page 155
Sixth Circuit - FRE 104(a), admissibility of evidence.	Book Page 155
Eighth Circuit - FRE 104(a), admissibility of evidence.	Book Page 155
FRE 104(b) Relevance That Depends on a Fact.	Book Page 155
FRE 105 Limiting Evidence That Is Not Admissible Against Other Parties or for Other Purposes	Book Page 156
FRE 106 Remainder of or Related Writings or Recorded Statements.	Book Page 156
FRE 201 Judicial Notice of Adjudicative Facts.	Book Page 156
FRE 201(b) - Kinds of Facts That May Be Judicially Noticed.	Book Page 157
Judicial notice of filings in related civil and administrative proceedings.	Book Page 157
FRE 301 Presumptions in Civil Cases Generally.	Book Page 158
FRE 302 Applying State Law to Presumptions in Civil Cases.	Book Page 158
FRE 401 Test for Relevant Evidence.	Book Page 158

Redundancy.....	Book Page 159
Evidence of bias.	Book Page 159
Relevance.	Book Page 159
Comparison of accused device to commercial embodiment and patent claims	Book Page 160
FRE 402 General Admissibility of Relevant Evidence.	Book Page 160
FRE 403 -Excluding Relevant Evidence for Prejudice, Confusion, Waste of Time, or Other Reasons.	Book Page 160
District court "may exclude"; weighing probative value versus prejudice.	Book Page 161
Evidence of denied PTAB petitions excluded.	Book Page 162
Evidence of denied PTAB petitions not excluded.	Book Page 163
Evidence of reexamination proceedings not excluded.	Book Page 164
FRE 404 Character Evidence; Crimes or Other Acts.	Book Page 164
FRE 405 Methods of Proving Character.	Book Page 165
FRE 406 Habit; Routine Practice..	Book Page 165
FRE 407 Subsequent Remedial Measures.....	Book Page 165
FRE 408 Compromise Offers and Negotiations.	Book Page 165
FRE 408(a) - Prohibited Uses.	Book Page 165
Employment case law.	Book Page 165
Patent case law.	Book Page 166
FRE 409 Offers to Pay Medical and Similar Expenses.....	Book Page 167
FRE 410 Pleas, Plea Discussions, and Related Statements.....	Book Page 167
FRE 411 Liability Insurance.	Book Page 167
FRE 412 Sex-Offense Cases: The Victim’s Sexual Behavior or Predisposition... ..	Book Page 167
FRE 413 Similar Crimes in Sexual-Assault Cases.	Book Page 167
FRE 414 Similar Crimes in Child Molestation Cases.....	Book Page 167
FRE 415 Similar Acts in Civil Cases Involving Sexual Assault or Child Molestation	Book Page 167
FRE 501 Privilege in General.	Book Page 168
Basis for new privilege.	Book Page 168
Attorney client privilege.	Book Page 168
Attorney client privilege for corporations.....	Book Page 169
Attorney client privilege for corporations, test, employee sufficiently identified with the corporation.....	Book Page 169
Attorney client privilege for corporations, test, corporation control group. ...	Book Page 169
Work-product privilege.....	Book Page 170
Waiver of work-product privilege.....	Book Page 172
Common interest doctrine exception to waiver of work-product privilege. ...	Book Page 172
Patent-agent privilege.	Book Page 172
Settlement negotiations privilege.	Book Page 173
FRE 502 Attorney-Client Privilege and Work Product; Limitations on Waiver... ..	Book Page 173
FRE 502(a) - (a) Disclosure Made in a Federal Proceeding or to a Federal Office or Agency;	

Scope of a Waiver.	Book Page 174
Scope of waiver of attorney client privilege.	Book Page 174
Scope of work-product privilege waiver.	Book Page 174
Scope of waiver based upon advice of counsel defense.	Book Page 175
FRE 502(d) - Controlling Effect of a Court Order.	Book Page 176
FRE 601 Competency to Testify in General.	Book Page 177
FRE 602 Need for Personal Knowledge.	Book Page 177
FRE 603 Oath or Affirmation to Testify Truthfully.	Book Page 177
FRE 604 Interpreter.	Book Page 177
FRE 605 Judge’s Competency as a Witness.	Book Page 177
FRE 606 Juror’s Competency as a Witness.	Book Page 177
FRE 607 Who May Impeach a Witness.	Book Page 178
FRE 608 A Witness’s Character for Truthfulness or Untruthfulness.	Book Page 178
FRE 609 Impeachment by Evidence of a Criminal Conviction.	Book Page 178
FRE 610 Religious Beliefs or Opinions.	Book Page 178
FRE 611 Interrogation of witnesses.	Book Page 178
FRE 612 Writing Used to Refresh a Witness’s Memory.	Book Page 179
FRE 613 Witness’s Prior Statement.	Book Page 179
FRE 614 Court’s Calling or Examining a Witness.	Book Page 179
FRE 615 Excluding Witnesses.	Book Page 179
FRE 701 Opinion Testimony by Lay Witnesses.	Book Page 180
Admission of lay testimony on obviousness issue is harmful error.	Book Page 180
FRE 702 Testimony by Expert Witnesses.	Book Page 181
Admissibility of Expert Testimony.	Book Page 181
National standard of review, abuse of discretion.	Book Page 181
CAFC Case law.	Book Page 183
Test for admissibility of expert testimony.	Book Page 183
The role FRE 702 plays in bench trials.	Book Page 184
Reliability goes to both weight and admissibility.	Book Page 186
FRE 702(a) - Qualifying as an expert.	Book Page 187
Qualifications specified in declaration.	Book Page 187
Testimony of Inventors.	Book Page 187
Testimony of unqualified expert on infringement and validity.	Book Page 188
Person of ordinary skill in the art (POSA), factor in qualification.	Book Page 189
Patent law expert.	Book Page 191
Expertise in patent office practice and procedure.	Book Page 191
Witness admissions of lack of qualifications.	Book Page 192
Lying under oath, basis for exclusion of expert testimony.	Book Page 192
FRE 702(b)-(d) - Basis and reasoning supporting conclusions.	Book Page 193
Basis for understanding of a PHOSITA.	Book Page 193
FRE 703 Bases of an Expert.	Book Page 193
FRE 704 Opinion on an Ultimate Issue.	Book Page 193

FRE 705 Disclosing the Facts or Data Underlying an Expert.	Book Page 194
FRE 706 Court-Appointed Expert Witnesses.	Book Page 194
PTO Patent examiners.	Book Page 196
Ninth Circuit - - FRE 706 appointment of expert.	Book Page 196
FRE 801 Definitions That Apply to This Article; Exclusions from Hearsay.	Book Page 196
FRE 801(a) - Statement.	Book Page 197
FRE 801(c) - Hearsay.	Book Page 197
FRE 801(d)(1)(B) - Prior Consistent Statement.	Book Page 198
FRE 801(d)(2)(b) - Party adoption of a statement.	Book Page 199
Adoption by silence.	Book Page 199
FRE 801(d)(2)(E) - Statement made by a party's coconspirator during and in furtherance of the conspiracy.	Book Page 199
FRE 802 The Rule Against Hearsay.	Book Page 200
FRE 803 Exceptions to the Rule Against Hearsay.	Book Page 201
FRE 803 (6) - Records of a Regularly Conducted Activity.	Book Page 203
FRE 803 (7) - Absence of a Record of a Regularly Conducted Activity.	Book Page 204
FRE 803(16) - Statements in Ancient Documents.	Book Page 204
FRE 803 (17) - Market Reports and Similar Commercial Publications.	Book Page 205
FRE 803 - Notes of Advisory Committee.	Book Page 205
FRE 804 Hearsay Exceptions; Declarant Unavailable.	Book Page 206
FRE 804(b)(3) - Statements against interest.	Book Page 207
FRE 805 Hearsay Within Hearsay.	Book Page 207
FRE 806 Attacking and Supporting the Declarant.	Book Page 207
FRE 807 Residual Exemption.	Book Page 207
FRE 901 Authenticating or Identifying Evidence.	Book Page 209
FRE 901(a) - Documents.	Book Page 210
FRE 901(b)(4) - Distinctive Characteristics and the Like.	Book Page 210
FRE 902 Evidence That Is Self-Authenticating.	Book Page 211
Authentication and hearsay are two separate requirements.	Book Page 212
FRE 902(6) - Printed material purporting to be a newspaper or periodical.	Book Page 213
FRE 902(9) - Commercial Paper and Related Documents.	Book Page 213
FRE 903 Subscribing Witness.	Book Page 213
FRE 1001 Definitions That Apply to This Article.	Book Page 214
FRE 1002 Requirement of the Original.	Book Page 214
FRE 1003 Admissibility of Duplicates.	Book Page 214
FRE 1004 Admissibility of Other Evidence of Content.	Book Page 214
FRE 1005 Copies of Public Records to Prove Content.	Book Page 214
FRE 1006 Summaries to Prove Content.	Book Page 214
Regional circuit law on FRE 1006.	Book Page 214
Ninth Circuit - FRE 1006.	Book Page 214
FRE 1007 Testimony or Statement of a Party to Prove Content.	Book Page 214
FRE 1008 Functions of the Court and Jury.	Book Page 214

FRE 1101 Applicability of the Rules.....	Book Page 214
FRE 1102 Amendments.....	Book Page 215
FRE 1103 Title.....	Book Page 215
Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (FRCP)	Book Page 216
FRCP 1 Scope and Purpose.....	Book Page 217
Court power to manage docket to facilitate just, speedy, and inexpensive dispositions	Book Page 217
Inherent power to grant a stay.....	Book Page 218
Reasons to grant a stay.....	Book Page 218
Court stay - concurrent reexamination proceeding.....	Book Page 218
Court stay -"relationship between reexamination and litigation".....	Book Page 219
Court stay - interference proceeding.....	Book Page 219
Court stay - PTAB AIA proceeding (IPR, PGR).....	Book Page 219
Court stay - test based upon PTAB AIA proceeding.....	Book Page 219
Court stay - first factor, stage of proceedings.....	Book Page 221
Court stay - second factor, simplification of issues.....	Book Page 221
Court stay - third factor, prejudice and disadvantage.....	Book Page 222
Court stay - four factors for determining prejudice and disadvantage.....	Book Page 223
Court stay - prejudice and disadvantage, timing of the inter partes petitions.....	Book Page 223
Court stay - prejudice and disadvantage, timing of stay request versus status of PTAB proceeding.....	Book Page 223
Court stay - prejudice and disadvantage, relationship of the parties.....	Book Page 223
Court stay - prejudice and disadvantage, stay of some patents but not others. .	Book Page 224
Plaintiff proceeding only on claims for which IPR were denied.....	Book Page 225
Courts have the power and duty to decide motions to disqualify counsel. . . .	Book Page 225
Motion to disqualify counsel due to a conflict of interest.....	Book Page 226
Motion to disqualify, conflict, imputed knowledge of former attorney.....	Book Page 226
Motion to disqualify counsel, scope of engagement, corporate affiliates.....	Book Page 228
Motion to disqualify, assignment of a patent does not transfer an attorney-client relationship	Book Page 228
Motion to disqualify, grant of a power of attorney, and attorney-client relationship	Book Page 229
Motion to disqualify, disclosure of confidential information, showing of attorney client relationship.....	Book Page 230
Regional circuit law FRCP 1, Disqualification and dismissal during appeal. . .	Book Page 231
Third Circuit - FRCP 1, Disqualification and dismissal during appeal. . . .	Book Page 231
Fourth Circuit - FRCP 1, Disqualification and dismissal during appeal. . .	Book Page 231
Rules of professional conduct in New Jersey.....	Book Page 231
Rules of professional conduct in West Virginia.....	Book Page 231

Rules of professional conduct in the USPTO.....	Book Page 231
FRCP 2 One Form of Action.....	Book Page 232
FRCP 3 Commencing an Action.....	Book Page 232
FRCP 4 Summons.....	Book Page 232
Procedurally proper summons is a prerequisite for personal jurisdiction.....	Book Page 232
FRCP 4(f) - Serving an Individual in a Foreign Country.....	Book Page 232
4(f)(1), Hague Service Convention, definition.....	Book Page 232
4(f)(1), courts are not required to use the Hague Service Convention to order a foreign national party to produce evidence physically located within a signatory nation. .	Book Page 233
4(f)(1), effect of Russia’s unilateral suspension of Hague Service Convention	Book Page 234
4(f)(3), service in a foreign country by other means.....	Book Page 235
FRCP 4(h) - Serving a Corporation, Partnership, or Association.....	Book Page 236
4(h), serving a foreign corporation.....	Book Page 236
4(h), serving a non-resident lacking state agent in Texas.....	Book Page 236
FRCP 4(k) - Territorial Limits of Effective Service.....	Book Page 237
FRCP 4(k)(2) - Federal Claim Outside State-Court Jurisdiction.....	Book Page 237
FRCP 5 Serving and Filing Pleadings and Other Papers.....	Book Page 238
FRCP 6 Computing and Extending Time; Time for Motion Papers.....	Book Page 238
FRCP 6(a) - Computing Time.....	Book Page 238
FRCP 6(b) - Extending Time.....	Book Page 238
FRCP 6(b)(1)(A) - Before deadline, "good cause" requirement.....	Book Page 238
FRCP 6(b)(1)(B) - After deadline, "excusable neglect " requirement.....	Book Page 238
FRCP 7 Pleadings Allowed; Form of Motions and Other Papers.....	Book Page 240
FRCP 7.1 Disclosure Statement.....	Book Page 240
FRCP 8 General Rules of Pleading.....	Book Page 240
FRCP (8)(a) - Claim for Relief.....	Book Page 241
FRCP (8)(a)(1) - Ground for court jurisdiction.....	Book Page 241
Court can raise question of its jurisdiction.....	Book Page 241
Lack of jurisdiction results in reversal.....	Book Page 242
Diversity federal jurisdiction.....	Book Page 242
Diversity jurisdiction facts must appear in the record.....	Book Page 242
FRCP 8(a)(2) - Showing that the pleader is entitled to relief.....	Book Page 243
Separate claim for pre-issuance infringement.....	Book Page 245
FRCP 8(a)(3) - Demand for relief.....	Book Page 247
FRCP 8(b) - Defenses; Admissions and Denials.....	Book Page 247
FRCP 8(c) - Affirmative Defenses.....	Book Page 247
Defendant has the burden of pleading an affirmative defense.....	Book Page 247
Plaintiff need not anticipate affirmative defenses.....	Book Page 247
Equitable estoppel must be plead.....	Book Page 247
FRCP 9 Pleading Special Matters.....	Book Page 248

FRCP 9(b) - Fraud or Mistake; Conditions of Mind.	Book Page 248
The particularity requirement applies to False Claims Act complaints.	Book Page 248
The particularity requirement applied to false marking complaints under 35 USC 292	Book Page 249
FRCP 10 Form of Pleadings.	Book Page 250
FRCP 11 Signing Pleadings, Motions, and Other Papers; Representations to the Court; Sanctions	Book Page 250
Central purpose of Rule 11 is to deter baseless filings in district court	Book Page 251
Test for reasonableness, totality of the circumstances.	Book Page 251
Limitations on Rule 11, and FRAP 38.	Book Page 252
FRCP 11(a) - Signature.	Book Page 252
Signor’s credibility must be assessed.	Book Page 252
Standard of review, deferential.	Book Page 252
FRCP 11(a), signature representation, signature identifies the person on whom the court can place responsibility.	Book Page 253
FRCP 11(b) - Representations to the Court.	Book Page 253
FRCP 11(b), imposes an objective, rather than subjective, standard of reasonableness	Book Page 255
FRCP 11(b), signature representation, conclusion drawn from legal research must be defensible.	Book Page 256
FRCP 11(b), signature representation, ongoing duty to ensure that the proceedings do not continue without a reasonable basis in law and fact.	Book Page 256
FRCP 11(c) - Sanctions.	Book Page 256
FRCP 11(c), sanctions, standard of review, abuse-of-discretion.	Book Page 256
FRCP 11(c), sanctions can be imposed on both the client and the attorney that signed the document	Book Page 257
FRCP 11(c), sanctions cannot be imposed on an attorney who did not signed the document	Book Page 257
FRCP 11(c), attorney’s law firm held jointly liable.	Book Page 257
FRCP 11(c), sanctions can be imposed for violating either prong, fact or law	Book Page 257
FRCP 11(c), motion for sanctions cannot be used to test sufficiency of a claim	Book Page 258
FRCP 11(c), facially valid claim for patent infringement not	Book Page 259
FRCP 11(c), litigation misconduct.	Book Page 259
FRCP 11(c), litigation misconduct, isolated overstatements do not rise to the level of sanctionable misconduct.	Book Page 259
FRCP 11(c), sanctions for serving but not filing a document.	Book Page 260
FRCP 12 Defenses and Objections: When and How Presented; Motion for Judgment on the Pleadings; Consolidating Motions; Waiving Defenses; Pretrial Hearing.	Book Page 261
FRCP 12(a) - Time to Serve a Responsive Pleading.	Book Page 261
FRCP 12(b) - How to Present Defenses.	Book Page 261

FRCP 12(b)(1) - Lack of subject-matter jurisdiction..	Book Page 261
Plaintiff bears the burden of proof on subject matter jurisdiction..	Book Page 261
Subject-matter jurisdiction challenges on law and disputed facts..	Book Page 262
Challenges to factual basis for subject matter jurisdiction.	Book Page 262
FRCP 12(b)(3) - Improper venue..	Book Page 264
FRCP 12(b)(4) - Insufficient process..	Book Page 264
FRCP 12(b)(5) - Insufficient service of process.	Book Page 264
FRCP 12(b)(6) - Failure to state a claim upon which relief can be granted.	Book Page 264
12(b)(6), general requirements.	Book Page 264
12(b)(6), findings limited to material within the complaint and judicially noticeable matters	Book Page 265
12(b)(6), incorporation by reference of documents attached to pleadings.	Book Page 266
12(b)(6), complaint must state a claim to relief that is plausible on its face.. . . .	Book Page 267
12(b)(6), infringement complaint must merely notify the defendant of acts or things accused of infringement..	Book Page 267
12(b)(6), infringement complaint, pleading facts inferring intent..	Book Page 269
Inferences must be drawn in favor of the plaintiff.	Book Page 269
12(b)(6) , leave to amend upon grant of motion.	Book Page 270
12(b)(6), patent eligibility.	Book Page 270
12(b)(6), patent eligibility, conclusions based upon intrinsic evidence.. . . .	Book Page 271
12(b)(6), patent eligibility, pleading “plausible and specific factual allegations that aspects of the claims are inventive”.	Book Page 272
12(b)(6), joint infringement, system claims that recite method claims..	Book Page 272
12(b)(6), Pro se plaintiff.	Book Page 273
Regional circuit law on FRCP 12(b)(6).	Book Page 273
First Circuit - FRCP 12(b)(6)..	Book Page 273
Second Circuit - FRCP 12(b)(6)..	Book Page 273
Third Circuit - FRCP 12(b)(6).	Book Page 274
Fourth Circuit - FRCP 12(b)(6).	Book Page 274
Fifth Circuit - FRCP 12(b)(6)..	Book Page 274
Sixth Circuit - FRCP 12(b)(6).	Book Page 274
Seventh Circuit - FRCP 12(b)(6).	Book Page 275
FRCP 12(b)(7) - Failure to join a party under Rule 19.	Book Page 275
FRCP 12(c) - Motion for Judgment on the Pleadings.	Book Page 275
Regional circuit law on FRCP 12(c)..	Book Page 275
Third Circuit - FRCP 12(c), Judgment on the pleadings.	Book Page 275
Ninth Circuit - FRCP 12(c), Judgment on the pleadings.	Book Page 275
FRCP 12(d)- Result of Presenting Matters Outside the Pleadings.	Book Page 275
FRCP 12(e) - Motion for a More Definite Statement.	Book Page 275
FRCP 12(f) - Motion to Strike..	Book Page 275
FRCP 12(g) - Joining Motions..	Book Page 276
FRCP 12(h) - Waiving and Preserving Certain Defenses.	Book Page 276

Arguments going specifically to unspecified patent claims preserves the arguments and claims for appeal.	Book Page 276
FRCP 13 Counterclaim and Crossclaim.	Book Page 277
FRCP 13(a) - Compulsory Counterclaim.. . . .	Book Page 277
Infringement counterclaim to a suit contesting infringement.	Book Page 277
Infringement counterclaim to a suit contesting ownership.	Book Page 277
FRCP 13(e) - Counterclaim Maturing or Acquired After Pleading.. . . .	Book Page 278
FRCP 13(g) - Crossclaim Against a Coparty.. . . .	Book Page 278
FRCP 14 Third-Party Practice.	Book Page 278
FRCP 15 Amended and Supplemental Pleadings.	Book Page 278
FRCP 15(a)(2) - Other Amendments.. . . .	Book Page 279
Leave to amend should be freely given.. . . .	Book Page 279
Leave to amend implicating open legal issues.	Book Page 279
Leave to amend affecting 101 eligibility analysis.. . . .	Book Page 279
FRCP 15(b) - Amendments During and After Trial.	Book Page 280
FRCP 15(c), Standard of review, relation back of amendments.	Book Page 280
15(c), Substantive test, relation back doctrine.	Book Page 281
15(c), Substantive test, relation back doctrine, new patent claims.	Book Page 281
FRCP 16 Pretrial Conferences; Scheduling; Management.	Book Page 281
FRCP 17 Plaintiff and Defendant; Capacity; Public Officers.	Book Page 281
FRCP 18 Joinder of Claims.	Book Page 281
FRCP 19 Required Joinder of Parties.	Book Page 281
FRCP 19(a) - Persons Required to Be Joined if Feasible.	Book Page 282
FRCP 19(a), exclusive licensee.. . . .	Book Page 282
FRCP 19(a), patent co-owner.	Book Page 285
FRCP 19(b) When Joinder Is Not Feasible.	Book Page 285
Regional circuit law on FRCP 19(b).. . . .	Book Page 287
Fifth Circuit - FRCP 19(b).. . . .	Book Page 287
FRCP 20 Permissive Joinder of Parties.	Book Page 288
FRCP 21 Misjoinder and Nonjoinder of Parties.	Book Page 288
FRCP 22 Interpleader.. . . .	Book Page 289
FRCP 23 Class Actions.	Book Page 289
FRCP 23.1 Derivative Actions.	Book Page 289
FRCP 23.2 Actions Relating to Unincorporated Associations.	Book Page 289
FRCP 24 Intervention.	Book Page 289
FRCP 24(a)(2) - Interest in property; impairment.	Book Page 289
Intervenor right to appeal.	Book Page 289
Regional circuit law on FRCP 24.	Book Page 289
Second Circuit - FRCP 24.. . . .	Book Page 289
FRCP 25 Substitution of Parties.	Book Page 290
FRCP 26 Duty of Disclosure; General Provisions Governing Discovery.	Book Page 290
FRCP 26(a) - Required Disclosures.. . . .	Book Page 290

FRCP 26(b) - Discovery Scope and Limits.	Book Page 290
Communications between experts and counsel.. . . .	Book Page 290
FRCP 26(b)(4) - Trial Preparation: Experts.. . . .	Book Page 291
FRCP 26(c) - Protective Orders.. . . .	Book Page 296
Protective order - access to confidential information.	Book Page 296
Counsel bar to opponent's confidential information.	Book Page 298
Litigation bar to participating in patent prosecution.	Book Page 298
Litigation bar to participation in IPRs.. . . .	Book Page 300
Litigation bar applies to IPRs on expired patents.	Book Page 302
Litigation bar to acquisition of patents.	Book Page 303
Confidentiality of peer review.. . . .	Book Page 303
Apex doctrine.	Book Page 304
FRCP 27 Depositions to Perpetuate Testimony.. . . .	Book Page 306
FRCP 28 Persons Before Whom Depositions May Be Taken.. . . .	Book Page 306
FRCP 29 Stipulations About Discovery Procedure.. . . .	Book Page 306
FRCP 30 Depositions by Oral Examination.	Book Page 306
FRCP 31 Depositions by Written Questions.	Book Page 306
FRCP 32 Using Depositions in Court Proceedings.	Book Page 306
FRCP 33 Interrogatories to Parties.	Book Page 306
FRCP 34 Producing Documents, Electronically Stored Information, and Tangible Things, or Entering onto Land, for Inspection and Other Purposes.	Book Page 306
Fourth Circuit - FRCP 34.. . . .	Book Page 307
FRCP 35 Physical and Mental Examinations.	Book Page 307
FRCP 36 Requests for Admission.	Book Page 307
FRCP 37 Failure to Make Disclosures or to Cooperate in Discovery; Sanctions.	Book Page 307
Regional circuit law on FRCP 37, duty to preserve evidence, spoliation.. . . .	Book Page 307
Third Circuit - FRCP 37.. . . .	Book Page 307
FRCP 37(b) - Failure to Comply with a Court Order.	Book Page 307
FRCP 37(b)(2) - Sanctions Sought in the District Where the Action Is Pending.	Book Page 308
Criteria for excluding untimely evidence.	Book Page 308
FRCP 37(c) - Failure to Disclose, Supplement, or to Admit.. . . .	Book Page 310
Duty to preserve evidence; spoliation.	Book Page 310
FRCP 37(c)(1) - Protective Orders.	Book Page 310
FRCP 37(e) - Failure to Provide Electronically Stored Information.	Book Page 311
FRCP 41 Dismissal of Actions.	Book Page 311
FRCP 41(a) - Voluntary Dismissal.	Book Page 311
41(a), dismissal without prejudice.	Book Page 311
41(a), filing a dismissal automatically terminates the action.	Book Page 312
41(a), right to dismiss, prior to answer or summary judgement motion.	Book Page 312
41(b), motion to dismiss, standard of review.	Book Page 313
FRCP 41(c) - Dismissing a Counterclaim, Crossclaim, or Third-Party Claim.	Book Page 313
41(c), dismissal of patent invalidity and unenforceability counterclaims, standard of review	

.....	Book Page 313
41(c), dismissal for mootness of patent invalidity and unenforceability counterclaims	
.....	Book Page 313
FRCP 45 Subpoena.	Book Page 314
FRCP45(d) - Protecting a Person Subject to a Subpoena; Enforcement.	Book Page 314
FRCP 45(d)(2)(B) - Objections.	Book Page 314
Fee shifting is mandatory.	Book Page 315
Costs of non compliance may include attorneys fees.	Book Page 316
FRCP 46 Objecting to a Ruling or Order.	Book Page 316
FRCP 49(a) - Special Verdict.	Book Page 317
FRCP49(b) General Verdict with Answers to Written Questions.	Book Page 317
Presumption that jury resolved underlying factual disputes.	Book Page 317
Jury free to make credibility determinations.	Book Page 318
FRCP 50 Judgment as a Matter of Law in a Jury Trial; Related Motion for a New Trial; Conditional Ruling.	Book Page 319
FRCP 50(a) - Judgment as a Matter of Law (JMOL).	Book Page 319
JMOL, Standard of review.	Book Page 319
JMOL Evidentiary Burden.	Book Page 319
JMOL, Evidentiary burden to grant JMOL of non-infringement.	Book Page 320
JMOL, Evidentiary burden to grant JMOL of lack of willful infringement.	Book Page 321
JMOL, requirement to fully hear from the non-movant, before decision.	Book Page 321
Regional circuit law on FRCP 50(a) JMOL.	Book Page 322
Third Circuit - FRCP 50 JMOL.	Book Page 322
Fifth Circuit - FRCP 50 JMOL.	Book Page 322
Seventh Circuit - FRCP 50 JMOL.	Book Page 323
Ninth Circuit - FRCP 50 JMOL.	Book Page 323
Eleventh Circuit - FRCP 50 JMOL.	Book Page 324
FRCP 50(b) - Renewing the Motion After Trial; Alternative Motion for a New Trial	
.....	Book Page 324
FRCP 50(c) - Granting the Renewed Motion; Conditional Ruling on a Motion for a New Trial	
.....	Book Page 324
Jury finding based upon legally erroneous theory.	Book Page 325
FRCP 50(d) - Time for a Losing Party's New-Trial Motion.	Book Page 325
FRCP 50(e) - Denying the Motion for Judgment as a Matter of Law; Reversal on Appeal	
.....	Book Page 325
FRCP 51 Instructions to the Jury; Objections; Preserving a Claim of Error.	Book Page 325
FRCP 1, jury instruction, review for error and prejudice.	Book Page 326
FRCP 1, jury instruction, review of instructions on claim construction.	Book Page 326
FRCP 51(c) - Objections.	Book Page 328
Objection to claim construction raised during <i>Markman</i>	Book Page 328
FRCP 52 Findings and Conclusions by the Court; Judgment on Partial Findings	
.....	Book Page 329

FRCP 52(a)(1) - In General.	Book Page 329
FRCP 52(a)(6) - Setting Aside the Findings	Book Page 331
Clearly erroneous standard of review.	Book Page 331
A factfinder's choice between two permissible views of the evidence is not clearly erroneous.	Book Page 331
Credibility determinations may receive special deference.	Book Page 332
The clearly erroneous standard applies to facts findings underpinning claim construction	Book Page 333
How the Federal Circuit must apply the clearly erroneous standard facts findings underpinning claim construction.	Book Page 334
FRCP 54 Judgment; Costs.	Book Page 335
FRCP 54(a) - Definition; Form.	Book Page 335
Consent decree.	Book Page 335
FRCP 54(b) - Judgment on Multiple Claims or Involving Multiple Parties.	Book Page 336
FRCP 54(d) - Costs; Attorney's Fees.	Book Page 336
Motion for attorneys' fees after stipulated dismissal.	Book Page 336
FRCP 56 Summary judgement (SJ).	Book Page 337
SJ is proper only when there is no genuine dispute as to any material fact and the movant is entitled to judgment as a matter of law.	Book Page 337
SJ, definition of a material fact.	Book Page 337
SJ, definition of a genuine dispute.	Book Page 337
SJ, genuine dispute requires evidentiary conflict created on the record.	Book Page 338
SJ, conclusory declaration, limited weight.	Book Page 338
SJ, weighing conflicting evidence is improper.	Book Page 338
SJ, burden of proof is on the moving party.	Book Page 339
SJ, genuine issue of no invalidity, PTO reexamination	Book Page 339
SJ of no DOE infringement does not automatically follow from SJ of no literal infringement	Book Page 339
SJ and the Sham affidavit doctrine.	Book Page 340
SJ of equitable estoppel of patent infringement.	Book Page 341
Regional circuit law on FRCP 56.	Book Page 341
Second Circuit.	Book Page 341
Fourth Circuit	Book Page 342
Fifth Circuit.	Book Page 342
Seventh Circuit.	Book Page 342
FRCP 58 Entering Judgment.	Book Page 342
Effect of subsequent claim invalidation on a fully paid reasonable royalty award pursuant to a judgement, when a portion of the litigation remains pending.	Book Page 343
FRCP 59 New Trial; Altering or Amending a Judgment.	Book Page 343
FRCP 59(a) - In General.	Book Page 344
FRCP 59(a)(1) - Grounds for New Trial.	Book Page 344
Regional circuit law on FRCP 59(a) Motion for a new trial.	Book Page 344

Fifth Circuit - FRCP 59(a) Motion for a new trial.	Book Page 344
Eighth Circuit - FRCP 59(a) Motion for a new trial.	Book Page 344
Ninth Circuit - FRCP 59(a) Motion for a new trial.	Book Page 344
FRCP 59(e) - Motion to Alter or Amend a Judgment.	Book Page 345
59(e), underlying policy, to enable courts to rectify their own mistakes.	Book Page 345
59(e), motions for attorneys fees.	Book Page 346
59(e), motions for costs.	Book Page 346
59(e), motion for prejudgement interest.	Book Page 347
Regional circuit law on FRCP 59(e) Amendment of a Judgment.	Book Page 348
Fifth Circuit - FRCP 59(e) Amendment of a Judgment.	Book Page 348
Sixth Circuit - FRCP 59(e) Amendment of a Judgment.	Book Page 348
FRCP 60 Relief from a Judgment or Order.	Book Page 348
FRCP 60(b) - Grounds for Relief from a Final Judgment, Order, or Proceeding.	Book Page 348
60(b)(6), vacatur for mootness.	Book Page 349
FRCP 65 Injunctions and Restraining Orders.	Book Page 350
FRCP 65(a) - Preliminary Injunction.	Book Page 350
Regional circuit law on FRCP 65(a).	Book Page 350
Ninth Circuit.	Book Page 350
FRCP 65(b) - Temporary Restraining Order.	Book Page 350
FRCP 65(c) - Security.	Book Page 351
FRCP 65(d) - Contents and Scope of Every Injunction and Restraining Order.	Book Page 351
Compliance of injunction with rule 65 is an issue of law.	Book Page 351
Scope of Injunction, subject matter.	Book Page 352
Scope injunction, against whom it applies.	Book Page 352
Scope of injunction, conduct to which it applies.	Book Page 354
Patent case, injunction, an injunction covering non infringing activities is not per se unlawful	Book Page 354
FRCP 70 Enforcing a Judgment for a Specific Act.	Book Page 355
FRCP 70(e) - Holding in Contempt.	Book Page 355
70(e), civil contempt, elements.	Book Page 355
70(e), civil contempt, attorney liability.	Book Page 356
70(e), civil contempt, judgment and non-final order.	Book Page 356
70(e), civil contempt, violation of a non final injunction, rule.	Book Page 356
FRCP 83 Rules by District Courts; Judge's Directives.	Book Page 357
FRCP 83(a) - Local Rules.	Book Page 357
83(a), local rules, must be consistent with the purposes of federal rules	Book Page 357
83(a), local patent rules.	Book Page 357
Limiting infringement contentions, whether related PTAB proceeding is a factor	Book Page 360
FRCP 85 Title.	Book Page 360

Federal Rules of Appellate Procedure (FRAP)	Book Page 360
FRAP 28.1 Cross-Appeals.....	Book Page 361
Cross-Appeal required to enlarge appellee’s rights or lessen appellant’s rights	Book Page 361
Appellee may rely upon anything in the record to support a decree.....	Book Page 361
Cross-appeal that does not expand scope of the judgement is improper.	Book Page 362
Failure to appeal on an issue on which a party lost below, precludes consideration on appeal	Book Page 362
Appellee cannot argue for vacatur on an issue on which it lost, below.	Book Page 363
FRAP 46 Attorneys.	Book Page 363
FRAP 46(c) Discipline.....	Book Page 363
Federal Circuit requires strict compliance with its rules.....	Book Page 363
Federal Circuit award of sanctions on appeal linked to merits of, and party’s conduct, during the appeal.....	Book Page 364
Federal Circuit Rules (FCR)	Book Page 364
FCR 32.1(c) Parties’ Citation of Nonprecedential Dispositions.	Book Page 365
FCR 36 Entry of Judgement; Judgement of Affirmance Without Opinion.....	Book Page 365
Title 1 USC - General Provisions	Book Page 367
1 USC Part 1 - Rules of Construction.	Book Page 367
1 USC 1 Words denoting number, gender, and so forth.	Book Page 367
The term “person” presumptively excludes the sovereign.	Book Page 367
Title 5 USC (Government Organization and Employees)	Book Page 368
5 USC Part 1 - The Agencies Generally (§§ 101 to 903).....	Book Page 368
5 USC Part 1, Chapter 5 - Administrative Procedure (§§ 500 to 596)	Book Page 368
5 USC § 551 - Definitions.....	Book Page 368
5 USC 553(b) and (c).....	Book Page 370
553, rule invalidation for failure to follow notice and comment requirements	Book Page 370
553, notice and comment rulemaking is evidence favoring <i>Chevron</i> deference	Book Page 371
553, definitions of legislative and interpretive rules.....	Book Page 371
553, final rule must be a logical outgrowth of the rule proposed.	Book Page 372
5 USC 554 Adjudications.	Book Page 373
554, IPR proceedings are subject to the APA.....	Book Page 373
554, IPR proceedings, APA standard of review.	Book Page 373
554(b), party notice in response to a motion.....	Book Page 373
554(b), notice and opportunity, due process does not require the PTAB have a hearing, unless a party requests one.	Book Page 374

554(b)(3), notice of facts, effect of consolidation of proceedings.	Book Page 374
554(b)(3), notice and opportunity to respond to patentability ground against proposed substitute claims raised <i>sua sponte</i> by the PTAB.	Book Page 375
554(b)(3), notice and opportunity to respond, new legal theories.. . . .	Book Page 375
554(b)(3), notice and opportunity to respond, change in claim construction . . .	Book Page 375
554(b)(3), notice and opportunity to respond, claim construction of a term not previously construed.	Book Page 376
544(b)(3), applies to petitioners.	Book Page 376
554(b)-(c), PTO must provide timely notice of “the matters of fact and law asserted,”	Book Page 377
554(b)-(c), agency must provide notice and opportunity to submit facts and arguments	Book Page 377
554(b)-(c), what does not constitute adequate notice in an IPR proceeding. . . .	Book Page 378
554(b)-(c), what constitutes adequate notice in an IPR proceeding.	Book Page 379
554(b)-(c), requirement for notice and an opportunity to be heard.	Book Page 380
554(b)-(c), PTAB may reach counter arguments.	Book Page 380
554(b)-(c), notice and opportunity, PTAB’s final decision may rely upon references not part of a ground stated in the petition, to document the knowledge that skilled artisans would bring to bear in reading the prior art.	Book Page 381
554(b)-(c), notice and opportunity, PTAB rules provide patent owner procedure for challenging evidence newly presented with a petitioner reply.	Book Page 382
554(b)-(c), notice and opportunity, relation to the “new ground of rejection” doctrine	Book Page 382
554(b)-(c), notice and opportunity, “observations” are not a substitute for the opportunity to present arguments and evidence.	Book Page 382
554(b)-(c), notice and opportunity, right to move to exclude, if evidence is not relevant	Book Page 383
554(c)(1), submission and consideration of facts, arguments.	Book Page 384
554(c)(1), arguments first presented at PTAB oral hearing, untimely.	Book Page 384
554(c) PTAB cannot rely upon material unless it gives a party an opportunity to respond after the other pertinence of the material has been identified.	Book Page 385
554(c), PTAB cannot relying solely upon assertion in petitioner's IPR reply for a finding, without giving patent owner an opportunity to respond.	Book Page 385
554(c), opportunity to respond to different factual assertions regarding the same reference is not determinative of adequate opportunity to respond.	Book Page 386
5 USC Chapter 7 - Judicial Review (sections 701 to 706)	Book Page 386
5 USC 701 Application; definitions.	Book Page 386
District court jurisdiction for APA causes of action.	Book Page 387
District Courts lack APA jurisdiction to review PTAB final written decisions	Book Page 387
5 USC 702 Right of Review.	Book Page 388

702, APA confers a general cause of action which may be limited by other statutes	Book Page 388
704, review of PTO decisions governed by APA and its standard of review...	Book Page 389
702, presumption favoring judicial review of administrative action.	Book Page 389
702, third party has no APA right to challenge a PTO decision to issue a patent	Book Page 389
702, third party has no APA right to challenge PTO decision to revive a patent	Book Page 389
702, third party has no APA right to challenge a PTO decision to revive an application	Book Page 390
5 USC 703 Form and venue of proceeding.	Book Page 390
5 USC 704 Actions Reviewable.	Book Page 390
704, definition of finality of agency action.	Book Page 391
704, APA review requires exhaustion of administrative remedies only when specified by statute or rule.	Book Page 391
704, statutory right of appellate review of PTAB decision implicitly deprives district court of APA jurisdiction.	Book Page 391
704, a PTAB institution decision does not meet the requirements for APA review	Book Page 392
704, tolling rule, finality, a timely request for reconsideration voids finality of the decision	Book Page 393
704, request for reconsideration of final agency action renders that action non-final as to the requesting party.	Book Page 394
5 USC 706 Scope of Review.	Book Page 395
706, APA applies to Federal Circuit review of PTO findings of fact.	Book Page 395
706(1) “compel agency action unlawfully withheld or unreasonably delayed”	Book Page 395
706(1) “hold unlawful and set aside agency action, findings, and conclusions”	Book Page 395
706(2)(A) “arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law”.	Book Page 396
5 USC 706(2)(A) “arbitrary, capricious”.	Book Page 396
706(2)(A), arbitrary and capricious, standard of review.	Book Page 396
706(2)(A), arbitrariness, PTAB cannot make opposite conclusion on the same issue in different cases.	Book Page 397
706(2)(A), arbitrariness, inconsistent PTAB conclusions regarding the weight to be accorded the same objective indicia evidence in related proceedings..	Book Page 397
706(2)(A), arbitrariness, inconsistent PTAB conclusions regarding obviousness in related proceedings having the same record.	Book Page 397
5 USC 706(2)(A) “abuse of discretion”.	Book Page 398
706(2)(A), abuse of discretion, standard of review..	Book Page 398
706(2)(A), abuse of discretion, definition.	Book Page 399

5 USC 706(2)(A), review of agency compliance with its rules.	Book Page 399
5 USC 706(2)(A), review of agency compliance sanctions rule 37 CFR 42.12(b)	Book Page 400
706(2)(A), abuse of discretion, failure to consider evidence bearing on an issue	Book Page 400
706(2)(A), abuse of discretion, PTAB denial of motion complying with rule requirements; failure to explain why motion was denied.	Book Page 402
5 USC 706(2)(A) “not in accordance with law”.	Book Page 403
706(2)(A), findings on anticipation are insufficient as a matter of law to decide the obviousness inquiry.	Book Page 403
5 USC 706(2)(B) “contrary to constitutional right, power, privilege, or immunity”	Book Page 404
5 USC 706(2)(C) “in excess of statutory jurisdiction, authority, or limitations, or short of statutory right”.	Book Page 404
706(2)(C), excess of statutory authority, agency cannot rely upon policy statements, as law	Book Page 404
5 USC 706(2)(D) “without observance of procedure required by law”.. . . .	Book Page 404
706(2)(D), IPRs are subject to the AIA's procedural requirements.. . . .	Book Page 405
706(2)(D), review limited to "grounds invoked by the agency".	Book Page 405
706(2)(D), PTAB bears the burden to memorialize the basis for agency action	Book Page 405
706(2)(D), the agency has an "obligation to develop an evidentiary basis for its findings"	Book Page 406
706(2)(D), PTAB must identify an evidentiary basis in the record, for any finding	Book Page 406
706(2)(D), PTAB must identify evidence showing that the natural result flowing from the disclosure results in the thing found, for a finding based upon inherency.. . . .	Book Page 406
706(2)(D), procedure requires findings based upon record evidence, and reasoning based upon findings that supports agency conclusions.. . . .	Book Page 407
706(2)(D), PTAB must provide reasoning by which the findings are deemed to support the agency's conclusion.	Book Page 408
706(2)(D), PTAB must describe a proposed combination sufficiently to support its reasoning why there would have been motivation and a reasonable expectation of success.. . . .	Book Page 408
706(2)(D), PTAB must identify a finding of a suggestion, teaching, or motivation to combine, to support obviousness of a combination.. . . .	Book Page 408
706(2)(D), PTAB must make particular findings to support “an express or an implicit showing” of a teaching, motivation or suggestion.. . . .	Book Page 409
706(2)(D), PTAB must make specific particular findings for a conclusion of obviousness	Book Page 410
706(2)(D), PTAB must make a determination of patentability on asserted grounds to support a conclusion that a claim is not shown to be unpatentable on those grounds.. . . .	Book Page 410
706(2)(D), PTAB must consider evidence proffered by a party, in deciding whether to admit	

the evidence. [Book Page 411](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB must provide an explanation of the basis for its evidentiary decisions
. [Book Page 411](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB must provide for meaningful appellate review of evidentiary decisions
. [Book Page 412](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB must provide a record of a decision on a request for authorization to file a
motion. [Book Page 412](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB must resolve claim construction disputes when its decision relies upon a
meaning for the disputed term. [Book Page 413](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB and examiner cannot rely upon mere attorney argument for the findings or
the reasoned explanation to support their decision. [Book Page 413](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB cannot reject certain arguments in favor of opposing arguments, without
explaining why it accepts the opposing arguments. [Book Page 414](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB cannot rely upon one party's failure to challenge another party's argument as
the basis for accepting the argument. [Book Page 415](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB may expressly adopt a party's argument as its own, so long as it identifies
evidentiary support.. . . . [Book Page 415](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB may rely upon expert asserting obviousness when expert's declaration
contains factual assertions related to supporting factual findings. [Book Page 415](#)
706(2)(D), PTAB decision that is "potentially lawful but insufficiently or inappropriately
explained" will be vacated and remanded. [Book Page 417](#)
5 USC 706(2)(E) "unsupported by substantial evidence in a case subject to sections 556 and 557
of this title or otherwise reviewed on the record of an agency hearing provided by statute"
. [Book Page 418](#)
706(2)(E), substantial evidence, definition. [Book Page 418](#)
706(2)(E), a finding or conclusion is supported by substantial evidence if a reasonable mind
might accept it. [Book Page 419](#)
706(2)(E), foundational case law for the substantial evidence standard.. . . . [Book Page 420](#)
706(2)(E), standard of PTAB factual findings is substantial evidence. [Book Page 421](#)
706(2)(E), PTAB's findings are reviewed based upon the record as a whole. . [Book Page 421](#)
706(2)(E), PTAB's findings regarding the teachings of prior art references do not need to be
supported by expert testimony. [Book Page 421](#)
706(2)(E), review of PTAB's findings based upon drawings. [Book Page 422](#)
706(2)(E), PTAB's finding that is contrary to the teachings of a reference, and instead relies
upon conclusory expert testimony, lacks substantial evidence. [Book Page 423](#)
5 USC 706(2)(F) "unwarranted by the facts to the extent that the facts are subject to trial de novo
by the reviewing court". [Book Page 423](#)
"district court[] reviewing agency action under the APA". [Book Page 423](#)
706(2)(F), agency action may be affirmed on grounds other than those relied upon by the
Agency in the proceedings below, if no new finding is required.. . . . [Book Page 423](#)
5 USC 706, "In making the foregoing determinations, the court shall review the whole record or
those parts of it cited by a party, and due account shall be taken of the rule of prejudicial error"

.....	Book Page 424
706, the rule of prejudicial error (harmless error rule).	Book Page 424
Vacate and Remand considerations.	Book Page 425
Title 7 USC - Agriculture.	Book Page 427
7 USC Chapter 57— Plant Variety Protection (sections 2321 to 2583)	Book Page 427
Subchapter I Plant Variety Protection Office (§§ 2321 - 2372).	Book Page 427
Subchapter II Protectability of Plant Varieties and Certificates of Protection (§§ 2401 - 2504)	
.....	Book Page 427
7 USC 2402 Right to plant variety protection; plant varieties protectable.	Book Page 427
Subchapter III Plant Variety Protection and Rights (§§ 2531 - 2583).	Book Page 428
Part J—Ownership and Assignment (sections 2531 to 2532).	Book Page 428
Part L—Remedies for Infringement of Plant Variety Protection, and Other Actions (sections 2561 to 2570).	Book Page 428
7 USC 2561 Remedy for infringement of plant variety protection.	Book Page 428
Title 9 USC Arbitration.	Book Page 429
9 USC Chapter 1— General Provisions (sections 1 to 16).	Book Page 429
9 USC 2 Validity, irrevocability, and enforcement of agreements to arbitrate.	Book Page 429
Title 11 USC Bankruptcy; and Appendix	Book Page 430
11 USC Chapter 3—Case Administration (sections 301 to 366).	Book Page 430
Subchapter IV—Administrative Powers (sections 361 to 366).	Book Page 430
11 USC 362 Automatic Stay.	Book Page 430
11 USC 365 Executory contracts and unexpired leases.	Book Page 431
11 USC 365(n) - (Pertaining to executory contract rights to intellectual property)	
.....	Book Page 431
Title 15 USC Commerce and Trade.	Book Page 433
15 USC 1 Trusts, etc., in restraint of trade illegal; penalty.	Book Page 433
ANDA reverse payments.	Book Page 435
15 USC 2 Monopolizing trade a felony; penalty.	Book Page 436
Elements of monopolization claim.	Book Page 436
Market power.	Book Page 437
Market power, relevant market.	Book Page 437
Market power, patents.	Book Page 438
<i>Walker process</i> antitrust.	Book Page 438
15 USC 15 Suits by persons injured.	Book Page 439
Antitrust Standing.	Book Page 440
Federal Circuit jurisdiction on antitrust relating to patent laws.	Book Page 441
Failure to License.	Book Page 442
Reliance upon offer to license, deceptive business practices.	Book Page 442

Settlements based antitrust.	Book Page 443
<u>Noerr-Pennington</u> based antitrust - governmental process abuse.	Book Page 444
Sham litigation pleadings requirements.	Book Page 444
15 USC Chapter 22—Trademarks (sections 1051 to 1141n).	Book Page 444
Subchapter I—The Principal Register (sections 1051 to 1072)..	Book Page 445
15 USC 1052(a) Trademarks registrable on principal register; concurrent registration	Book Page 445
15 USC 1071 Appeal to courts.	Book Page 446
15 USC 1071(a) - Persons entitled to appeal; United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit; waiver of civil action; election of civil action by adverse party; procedure	Book Page 446
15 USC 1071(b) - Civil action; persons entitled to; jurisdiction of court; status of Director; procedure.	Book Page 447
Subchapter II—The Supplemental Register (sections 1091 to 1096).	Book Page 447
Subchapter III—General Provisions (sections 1111 to 1129).	Book Page 448
15 USC 1117 Recovery for violation of rights	Book Page 448
<i>Octane</i> standard applies to the Lanham Act.	Book Page 449
15 USC 1117(b) Treble damages for use of counterfeit mark ... (c) Statutory damages for use of counterfeit marks ...(d) Statutory damages for violation of section 1125(d)(1) ... (e) Rebuttable presumption of willful violation (effective 10/13/2008)..	Book Page 450
15 USC 1125 False designations of origin, false descriptions, and dilution forbidden	Book Page 450
15 USC 1125(a) Limitation on standing to sue for false advertising.. . . .	Book Page 455
Standing requires “injury to a commercial interest in reputation or sales”.. . . .	Book Page 455
15 USC 1125(a)(1) - Trade dress infringement.	Book Page 455
Secondary meaning.	Book Page 455
Subchapter IV—The Madrid Protocol (sections 1141 to 1141n).	Book Page 456
Title 17 USC Copyrights.	Book Page 456
17 USC 101 Definitions..	Book Page 456
Requirement for separability from the useful article	Book Page 457
17 USC 102 Subject matter of copyright: In general..	Book Page 458
17 USC107 Limitations on exclusive rights: Fair use.	Book Page 458
Fair use defense to copyright violation, for legal proceedings.	Book Page 459
Copyright exhaustion by first sale, no geographic limitation on location of sale	Book Page 460
17 USC 505 Remedies for infringement: Costs and attorney's fees.	Book Page 460
17 USC 1202 Integrity of copyright management information.	Book Page 461
17 USC 1203 Civil remedies.	Book Page 462
17 USC 1301 Designs protected.	Book Page 462

Title 18 USC (Crimes and Criminal Procedure)	Book Page 463
Chapter 11—Bribery, Graft, and Conflicts of Interest (sections 201 to 227) ..	Book Page 463
18 USC 201 Bribery of public officials and witnesses.	Book Page 463
“official act”.	Book Page 465
Agreement to perform an official act.	Book Page 466
“exert that pressure or give that advice in exchange for a thing of value”.....	Book Page 466
18 USC Chapter 21—Contempts (sections 401 to 403)	Book Page 466
18 USC 401 Power of court.....	Book Page 466
Appellate courts have the power to punish for contempt.	Book Page 466
Contempt for violation of an injunction, lack of intent is not a defense to contempt	Book Page 467
Contempt for violating an injunction relating to infringing a patent.	Book Page 467
Contempt, patent case, plaintiff has the burden of proof by clear and convincing evidence	Book Page 467
Contempt, patent case, standard of review, clear error on findings and abuse of discretion for sanctions award.	Book Page 467
Contempt, patent case, no threshold test for the propriety of a contempt action for patent infringement.....	Book Page 467
Contempt, patent case, contempt action requires a detailed accusation.	Book Page 468
Contempt, patent case, test for violation of injunction, “more than colorable differences” standard.	Book Page 468
Contempt, patent case, test, relevant differences are those for elements that were the basis for the prior finding of infringement and the modified version of those elements in the new thing	Book Page 468
Contempt, patent case, test, first, the court must find those differences to be insignificant to find a violation of the injunction.	Book Page 469
Contempt, patent case, test, second, the court must find the newly accused product continues to infringe the relevant claims to find a violation of the injunction	Book Page 469
Contempt, patent case, test, the court is bound by claim construction from the antecedent case	Book Page 469
Chapter 47—Fraud and False Statements (sections 1001 to 1040)	Book Page 470
18 USC 1001 Statements or entries generally.	Book Page 470
1001, false statement, materiality, natural tendency to influence, or is capable of influencing agency decision or function.	Book Page 470
1001, false statement, intent, does not require proof of actual knowledge of federal agency jurisdiction.	Book Page 471
1001, literally true but evasive answer is insufficient to support perjury prosecution	Book Page 471
Chapter 73—Obstruction of Justice (sections 1501 to 1521)	Book Page 471
18 USC 1503 Influencing or injuring officer or juror generally.	Book Page 471
1503, core elements of the offense.	Book Page 471

Nexus test.	Book Page 472
18 USC 1512 Tampering with a witness, victim, or an informant.	Book Page 472
18 USC 1512(c) - Tampering with evidence.	Book Page 472
1512(c), “official proceeding” means a formal hearing.	Book Page 472
18 USC 1519 Destruction, alteration, or falsification of records in Federal investigations and bankruptcy.	Book Page 473
18 USC Chapter 90— Protection of Trade Secrets (sections 1831 to 1839).	Book Page 473
18 USC 1831 Economic espionage.	Book Page 473
18 USC 1832 Theft of trade secrets.	Book Page 474
18 USC 1833 Exceptions to prohibitions.	Book Page 474
18 USC 1834 Criminal forfeiture.	Book Page 475
18 USC 1835 Orders to preserve confidentiality.	Book Page 475
18 USC 1836 Civil proceedings.	Book Page 476
18 USC 1837 Applicability to conduct outside the United States.	Book Page 476
18 USC 1838 Construction with other laws.	Book Page 476
18 USC 1839 Definitions.	Book Page 477
Trade secrets, state and common law.	Book Page 478
Trade secret, confidential communications.	Book Page 479
Trade secret, requirements for a trade secret.	Book Page 479
Trade secret, surveillance.	Book Page 480
Trade secret, shop rights.	Book Page 480
Trade secret, governed by state common law, not federal common law.	Book Page 480
Title 19 USC (Customs Duties).	Book Page 481
19 USC 1202 - Harmonized Tariff Schedule.	Book Page 481
19 USC 1337 Unfair practices in import trade.	Book Page 482
19 USC 1337(a) - Unlawful activities; covered industries; definitions.	Book Page 482
ITC, standards of appellate review.	Book Page 483
ITC decisions on patent issues, lack of preclusive effect.	Book Page 484
ITC, trade secret misappropriate standard applicable to 337 proceedings.	Book Page 484
ITC, extraterritoriality in 337 proceedings.	Book Page 484
ITC, finality of a Commission determination.	Book Page 485
19 USC 337(a)(1)(A) - Unfair competition in the importation of articles.	Book Page 485
Complaint alleging proving violations of the FDCA and where the FDA has not taken the position that the articles at issue do, indeed, violate the FDCA.	Book Page 485
19 USC 1337(a)(1)(B)(i) - Importation of articles that infringe patent or copyrights	Book Page 486
"articles that infringe"	Book Page 486
19 USC 1337(a)(2) and (3).	Book Page 487
19 USC 1337(d) Exclusion of articles from entry	Book Page 488
ITC, authority to decline institution.	Book Page 488

ITC, discretion to exclude articles that induce patent infringement.	Book Page 488
ITC, authority to enjoin officers, employees, agents.	Book Page 489
ITC, duration of exclusion.	Book Page 489
ITC, limitations on Scope of Exclusion Orders.	Book Page 490
19 USC 1337(f) - Cease and desist orders; civil penalties.	Book Page 491
19 USC 1337(f)(2) - Civil penalty	Book Page 491
ITC, civil penalties on corporate officers.	Book Page 491
ITC, scope of the public interest factors, <i>ebay</i> inapplicable.	Book Page 491
19 USC 1526 Merchandise bearing American trade-mark	Book Page 491
37 CFR 133.23 Restrictions on importation of gray market articles.	Book Page 492
19 USC 1673 Imposition of antidumping duties.	Book Page 492
Title 21 USC Food And Drugs.	Book Page 494
21 USC Chapter 9— Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.	Book Page 494
SUBCHAPTER I—SHORT TITLE.	Book Page 494
21 USC 301 Short title.	Book Page 494
SUBCHAPTER II—DEFINITIONS.	Book Page 494
SUBCHAPTER III—PROHIBITED ACTS AND PENALTIES.	Book Page 494
SUBCHAPTER IV—FOOD.	Book Page 494
SUBCHAPTER V—DRUGS AND DEVICES.	Book Page 494
(Subchapter V is divided into Parts A to I, and spans 21 USC 351 to 360ff-7).	Book Page 494
21 USC 355 New drugs.	Book Page 494
21 USC 355(a) Necessity of effective approval of application.	Book Page 494
21 USC 355(b) Filing application; contents.	Book Page 494
21 USC 355(c) Period for approval of application; period for, notice, and expedition of hearing; period for issuance of order.	Book Page 494
21 USC 355(j)(1) Abbreviated new drug applications.	Book Page 495
21 USC 355(j)(2)(A) - ANDA Contents.	Book Page 495
21 USC 355(j)(5)(B)(iii) Certification, infringement action, 30 month stay.	Book Page 495
21 USC 355(j)(5)(B)(iv) 180-day exclusivity period.	Book Page 497
21 USC 355(j)(5) Civil action to obtain patent certainty.	Book Page 497
21 USC 355(j)(5)(C)(ii) Counterclaim to infringement action.	Book Page 497
21 USC 355(j)(5)(C)(ii)(I) - “does not claim . . . an approved method of using the drug”	Book Page 498
21 USC 355(j)(5)(C)(ii) - “submitted by the holder under subsection (b) or (c)”	Book Page 498
FDA Patent use codes.	Book Page 499
Generic may force correction of inaccurate use codes.	Book Page 499
21 USC 360(e) - Premarket approval.	Book Page 500
SUBCHAPTER VI—COSMETICS.	Book Page 500
SUBCHAPTER VII—GENERAL AUTHORITY.	Book Page 500

(Subchapter VII is divided into Parts A to I, and spans 21 USC 371 to 379dd-2) [Book Page 500](#)

SUBCHAPTER VIII—IMPORTS AND EXPORTS. [Book Page 500](#)

(Subchapter VIII spans 21 USC 381 to 384g). [Book Page 500](#)

SUBCHAPTER IX—TOBACCO PRODUCTS. [Book Page 500](#)

(Subchapter IX spans 21 USC 387 to 387u). [Book Page 500](#)

SUBCHAPTER X—MISCELLANEOUS. [Book Page 500](#)

(Subchapter X spans 21 USC 391 to 399i). [Book Page 500](#)

Title 28 USC—Judiciary And Judicial Procedure; and Appendix. [Book Page 501](#)

28 USC Chapter 83— Courts of Appeals (sections 1291 to 1296). [Book Page 501](#)

28 USC 1291 Final decisions of district courts. [Book Page 501](#)

 Final decision, appealability, collateral order doctrine. [Book Page 501](#)

 Final decision, appealability, collateral order doctrine, disclosure order requiring breach of attorney-client privilege. [Book Page 504](#)

 Final decision, appealability, collateral order doctrine, order refusing to disqualify counsel [Book Page 504](#)

 Final decision, writ of mandamus. [Book Page 505](#)

28 USC 1292 Interlocutory decisions. [Book Page 506](#)

28 USC 1292(a)(1). [Book Page 508](#)

 Stay, effectively denying motion for a preliminary injunction, appealable. . . . [Book Page 508](#)

 Permanent loss of an agency’s ability to appeal the lower court’s determination of a legal issue, appealable. [Book Page 509](#)

 Contempt Order generally not subject to interlocutory appeal. [Book Page 510](#)

 Pendant appellate jurisdiction as a basis for appealability of otherwise unappealable rulings [Book Page 510](#)

1292(c)(1) - Federal Circuit jurisdiction over appeal from an order in any case otherwise appealable to the Federal Circuit. [Book Page 511](#)

28 USC 1292(c)(2) accounting. [Book Page 511](#)

28 USC 1292(d)(4)(A) Interlocutory appeal from a decision on a motion to transfer [Book Page 512](#)

28 USC 1295 Jurisdiction of the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit [Book Page 512](#)

 1295, jurisdiction is "the initial inquiry in any appeal"..... [Book Page 514](#)

 1295, standard of review of jurisdiction determinations..... [Book Page 514](#)

 1295, burden of establishing that jurisdiction exists..... [Book Page 514](#)

 1295, jurisdiction based upon well pleaded complaint rule. [Book Page 514](#)

 1295, meaning of "arising under" in 1338. [Book Page 515](#)

 1295, jurisdiction over writ of mandamus in cases where the Federal Circuit would have jurisdiction over an appeal..... [Book Page 515](#)

 1295, exclusive jurisdiction over writ of mandamus where jurisdiction to hear an appeal

would be exclusive.....	Book Page 516
1295, record rule, appellate court cannot rely on extra-record extrinsic evidence	
.....	Book Page 516
1295, exception to the record rule, fraud on the tribunal.	Book Page 517
1295, final judgement rule.	Book Page 518
1295, decision on merits is final regardless of adjudication of status of attorney’s fees	
.....	Book Page 518
1295, decision on the merits requires determination of damages, for finality. .	Book Page 519
1295, finality determined based solely upon appealed-from decision.	Book Page 519
1295, finality determined based solely upon appealed-from decision, exception, waiver of	
undecided issue.	Book Page 520
1295, finality, exceptionality determination under 285 requires fee quantification	
.....	Book Page 521
1295, finality, merger of interlocutory orders.....	Book Page 521
1295, retention of jurisdiction over pendent claims.	Book Page 522
1295, standard of review of the Federal Circuit's own mandate, de novo.	Book Page 522
28 USC 1295(a)(1) - District Court, patents, plant variety protection..	Book Page 523
1295(a)(1) “Act of Congress relating to patents” includes 42 USC 5908 (vesting of title in the	
United States to certain patents and inventions)	Book Page 524
1295(a)(1), <i>Walker Process</i> claim insufficient to confer subject matter jurisdiction	
.....	Book Page 524
28 USC 1295(a)(2) - District Court, certain claims against the government..	Book Page 525
28 USC 1295(a)(3) - Court of Claims.	Book Page 525
28 USC 1295(a)(4)(A) - PTAB decisions, patent proceedings.	Book Page 525
Jurisdiction to rule on appeals from decisions resulting from partial institutions	
.....	Book Page 525
Jurisdiction to hear appeal when all claims challenged by an IPR were disclaimed	
.....	Book Page 526
Jurisdiction to review Board's determination of the Board's jurisdiction.	Book Page 526
Jurisdiction in an appeal from an IPR proceeding limited to IPR grounds authorized by statute	
.....	Book Page 527
28 USC 1295(a)(4)(B) - PTO and TTAB decisions on trademark proceedings. . .	Book Page 527
28 USC 1295(a)(4)(C) - District Court review of PTO proceedings.....	Book Page 527
28 USC 1295(a)(5) - Court of International Trade decisions.	Book Page 527
28 USC 1295(a)(6) - ITC decisions.....	Book Page 527
28 USC 1295(a)(7) - Commerce department decisions on certain tariffs.	Book Page 528
28 USC 1295(a)(8) - Plant Variety Protection Act appeals.....	Book Page 528
28 USC 1295(a)(9) - Merit Systems Protection Board appeals.....	Book Page 529
28 USC 1295(a)(10) - An agency board of contract appeals.....	Book Page 529
28 USC 1295(a)(11)-(14) - Miscellaneous.	Book Page 529
CAFC (Court of Appeals For the Federal Circuit), binding precedent.....	Book Page 529
CAFC - Choice of Laws.....	Book Page 530

CAFC Choice of Law - Preemption.	Book Page 530
CAFC Choice of Law - Personal jurisdiction.	Book Page 530
CAFC Choice of Law - Eleventh Amendment waiver.	Book Page 531
CAFC Choice of Law - Federal Circuit jurisdiction.	Book Page 531
CAFC Choice of Law - Law of judgements.	Book Page 531
CAFC Choice of Law - Patent cases spanning jurisdictions.	Book Page 532
CAFC Choice of Law - Issues of patent law.	Book Page 532
CAFC Choice of Law - Propriety of Venue pursuant to 28 USC 1400(b) and 1406(a)	Book Page 533
CAFC Choice of Law - Transfer pursuant to 28 USC 1404(a).	Book Page 533
CAFC Choice of Law - Conflicts of patent law with other laws.	Book Page 533
CAFC Choice of Law - Trade secret law.	Book Page 533
CAFC Choice of Law - Interpretation of a settlement agreement.	Book Page 534
CAFC Choice of Law - Arbitration agreements.	Book Page 534
CAFC Choice of Law - Admissibility of evidence.	Book Page 535
CAFC Choice of Law - Court Local rules.	Book Page 535
CAFC review of particular local rules for abuse of discretion.	Book Page 535
Local rules requiring infringement contentions.	Book Page 535
CAFC Choice of Law - Court Local Patent rules.	Book Page 536
CAFC Choice of Law - Issues of preclusion generally	Book Page 536
CAFC Choice of law, patent infringement claim preclusion.	Book Page 537
Regional circuit law - claim preclusion.	Book Page 537
Fourth Circuit.	Book Page 537
CAFC Choice of Law - Judicial estoppel.	Book Page 538
Regional circuit law - Judicial estoppel.	Book Page 538
First Circuit.	Book Page 538
CAFC Choice of Law - FRE Evidentiary rulings.	Book Page 538
CAFC Choice of Law - FRE 706 appointment of expert	Book Page 539
CAFC Choice of Law - Damages in patent cases.	Book Page 539
CAFC Choice of Law - Factors for determining which law to apply to procedural issues	Book Page 539
CAFC choice of law - Procedural issue unique to patent law.	Book Page 539
CAFC choice of law - Waiver and forfeiture in the context of claim construction arguments	Book Page 540
CAFC choice of law - Procedural question relating to CAFC’s exclusive subject matter jurisdiction.	Book Page 540
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 1, Contempt proceeding.	Book Page 541
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 1, Review of district court's disqualification and dismissal	Book Page 541
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 1, disqualification and dismissal during appeal	Book Page 541

CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 12(c) judgement on the pleadings.	Book Page 541
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 12(b)(6) Motions to dismiss.	Book Page 541
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 15(c) Relation back of amendments.	Book Page 542
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 24 Intervention.	Book Page 542
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 19(b) Required Party.	Book Page 542
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 34 Producing documents.	Book Page 543
CAFC Choice of Law - Production of documents.	Book Page 544
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 37 Sanctions.	Book Page 544
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 41(b) Court ordered dismissal.	Book Page 544
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 49 Jury verdict form.	Book Page 544
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 51 Jury instruction on an issue of patent law. . .	Book Page 545
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 56 Summary Judgment generally.	Book Page 545
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 56 Summary Judgment of noninfringement. . .	Book Page 545
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 50 JMOL; New Trial; Conditional Ruling. . . .	Book Page 545
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 59(a) Motion for a new trial.	Book Page 546
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 59(e) Amendment of a Judgment	Book Page 546
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 65(a) Grant of preliminary injunctions.	Book Page 546
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 65(d) Grant of permanent injunction.	Book Page 547
CAFC Choice of Law - FRCP 65(d) Scope of injunction.	Book Page 547
CAFC - Personal Jurisdiction Law.	Book Page 547
CAFC, personal jurisdiction, standard of review.	Book Page 547
CAFC, presumption in favor of plaintiff's jurisdictional factual assertions. . .	Book Page 548
CAFC, personal jurisdiction, test.	Book Page 548
CAFC, Long Arm Statute, and Due Process Requirements.	Book Page 548
CAFC, Long Arm Statute.	Book Page 548
CAFC, Due Process Requirement.	Book Page 549
CAFC, 3 factor test for whether asserting jurisdiction over an out-of-state defendant comports with due process.	Book Page 549
Factor 1 - Activities purposefully directed at residents of the forum.	Book Page 549
Factor 3 - "reasonable and fair".	Book Page 550
CAFC, stream of commerce test for specific personal jurisdiction.	Book Page 550
CAFC, stream of commerce test - Supreme Court split.	Book Page 550
CAFC, specific jurisdiction.	Book Page 552
CAFC, stream of commerce test theory, cases.	Book Page 552
Personal jurisdiction, law of the flag doctrine.	Book Page 553
CAFC, personal jurisdiction - offer for sale.	Book Page 554
CAFC, personal jurisdiction - cease and desist letters.	Book Page 554
CAFC, personal jurisdiction - cease and desist letters plus exclusive license. .	Book Page 555
CAFC, personal jurisdiction - "obligation on the patent holder to enforce or defend"	
.	Book Page 556
CAFC, personal jurisdiction - Indemnification provisions.	Book Page 558
CAFC, personal jurisdiction - Web sites.	Book Page 558

CAFC, personal jurisdiction - Filing orders directed to the forum state.	Book Page 558
Issue preclusion and claim preclusion, effect of stipulated judgments.	Book Page 559
CAFC - Forfeiture and Waiver on Appeal.	Book Page 559
CAFC, waiver and forfeiture, reclassification of prior case law.	Book Page 559
CAFC, argument not raised in opening brief are waived.	Book Page 560
CAFC, arguments not developed are waived.	Book Page 560
CAFC, arguments raised in footnotes are waived.	Book Page 561
CAFC, failure to make an argument below, is forfeited.	Book Page 562
CAFC, failure to assert below, a factual finding, is forfeited.	Book Page 563
CAFC, failure to dispute below, addition of a party, is forfeited.	Book Page 563
CAFC, arguments that clarify or support arguments below, are not forfeited. .	Book Page 563
CAFC, basis for exceptions to forfeiture.	Book Page 564
CAFC, factors affecting existence of forfeiture.	Book Page 565
CAFC, factors affecting forfeiture of new arguments.	Book Page 566
CAFC, issues may be decided when necessary to the resolution of other issues	Book Page 566
CAFC, waiver, preserving claim construction for review.	Book Page 567
CAFC, claim construction not presented below is forfeited.	Book Page 567
CAFC, new arguments for claim construction asserted below, but relying upon portions of the specification not identified below, are not forfeited.	Book Page 568
CAFC, the tribunal's understanding of its own claim construction, is not forfeited	Book Page 569
CAFC, issues “properly considered moot” at time of original ruling, are not forfeited	Book Page 569
CAFC, right to prompt remand request, in view of <i>SAS</i>	Book Page 570
CAFC, forfeiture of right to remand, in view of <i>SAS</i>	Book Page 571
Scope of proper appellee arguments.	Book Page 572
Appellee can argue for affirmance on alternative grounds.	Book Page 572
Federal Circuit lacks jurisdiction on appeal of denial of an SJ motion.	Book Page 573
28 USC Chapter 85— District Courts; Jurisdiction (sections 1330 to 1369). .	Book Page 573
28 USC 1331 - Federal Question.	Book Page 573
28 USC 1332 Diversity of citizenship; amount in controversy; costs.	Book Page 574
28 USC 1332(a) - Diversity.	Book Page 574
Personal jurisdiction.	Book Page 574
Personal jurisdiction of a parent company.	Book Page 575
Personal jurisdiction based upon government contacts.	Book Page 575
Specific Jurisdiction.	Book Page 576
Attorney client and work product privileges.	Book Page 576
28 USC 1338 Patents, plant variety protection, copyrights, mask works, designs, trademarks, and unfair competition.	Book Page 580
1338(a), federal preemption of any civil action arising under federal law relating to patents,	

plant variety protection, or copyrights and trademarks.	Book Page 581
1338(a), scope of appellate jurisdiction arising from district court jurisdiction	Book Page 581
Limitations to "arising under," for 1331 and 1338(a).	Book Page 583
"arising under", discretionary supplemental jurisdiction.	Book Page 583
"arising under," patent license agreement violations.	Book Page 583
"federal jurisdiction over a state law claim".	Book Page 584
Court jurisdiction in ANDA infringement.	Book Page 585
28 USC 1361 Action to compel an officer of the United States.	Book Page 588
Mandamus.	Book Page 588
28 USC 1367 Supplemental jurisdiction.	Book Page 589
Supplemental jurisdiction, foreign patents.	Book Page 590
28 USC Chapter 87— District Courts; Venue (sections 1390 to 1413).	Book Page 591
28 USC 1391 Venue generally.	Book Page 591
28 USC 1391(b).	Book Page 592
28 USC 1391(c)(3) - defendant not resident in the United States	Book Page 593
28 USC 1391(e) - Actions Where Defendant Is Officer or Employee of the United States	Book Page 594
1391, not applicable to personal jurisdiction under 35 USC 146.	Book Page 594
28 USC 1400 Patents and copyrights, mask works, and designs.	Book Page 595
State sovereignty does not grant a State the right to bring a patent infringement suit in an improper venue.	Book Page 595
28 USC 1400(b) - Venue for a "civil action for patent infringement"	Book Page 595
1400(b), plaintiff bears the burden of establishing proper venue.	Book Page 595
1400(b), "resides," a domestic corporation resides only in its State of incorporation, for purposes of the patent venue statute.	Book Page 595
1400(b), "resides," a domestic corporation incorporated in a State having multiple judicial districts does not reside in every judicial district in that State.	Book Page 596
1400(b), "resides," a domestic corporation incorporated in a State resides only in a single judicial district in that State.	Book Page 597
1400(b), "resides," if the corporate defendant has a principle place of business its State of incorporation, it resides in the judicial district containing that place.	Book Page 597
1400(b), "resides," if the corporate defendant has no principle place of business in its State of incorporation, it resides in the judicial district containing its registered office.	Book Page 598
1400(b), "resides," residency of one entity may be imputed to another, on a clear and convincing showing of fraud, injustice, or unfairness.	Book Page 599
Venue for alien defendants controlled by 1391(d), and not 1400(b).	Book Page 600
28 USC 1400(b) "where the defendant has committed acts of infringement"	Book Page 601
Sales exempted from infringement pursuant to 35 USC 271(e)(1).	Book Page 602
ANDA filing may show "acts of infringement".	Book Page 602
28 USC 1400(b), "acts of infringement," means the submission of the ANDA	

.....	Book Page 602
28 USC 1400(b), and not 28 USC 1391, is applicable to ANDA infringement actions under 35 USC 271(e)(2)(A).	Book Page 603
28 USC 1400(b) "regular and established place of business".	Book Page 604
28 USC 1400(b) "place".	Book Page 604
Registered foreign corporation and agent not relevant.	Book Page 605
Subsidiary corporation's place not imputed to parent.	Book Page 605
28 USC 1400(b) "regular".	Book Page 606
28 USC 1400(b) "established".	Book Page 606
28 USC 1400(b) "defendant has ... place of business".	Book Page 607
Location of employees.	Book Page 607
Defendant's representations regarding place of business.	Book Page 608
Nature and activity of alleged place of business.	Book Page 608
What constitutes a “regular and established place of business” in e-commerce?	Book Page 608
28 USC 1404 Change of venue.	Book Page 609
Transfer motion, court must give decision of the motion top priority.	Book Page 609
Burden of proof.	Book Page 610
Transfer, private factors.	Book Page 610
Transfer, public factors.	Book Page 611
Transfer, declaratory judgement.	Book Page 611
Transfer, first filer rule.	Book Page 612
Transfer, first filer rule, CAFC.	Book Page 612
Transfer, first filer rule, Ninth Circuit.	Book Page 613
Transfer, patent cases.	Book Page 613
Transfer factors, Ninth Circuit.	Book Page 614
Transfer factors, Fourth Circuit.	Book Page 615
Transfer factors, Ed. Va.	Book Page 615
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., plaintiff choice of forum.	Book Page 615
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., convenience of parties.	Book Page 616
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., convenience of witnesses.	Book Page 616
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., interest of justice.	Book Page 617
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., interest of justice, related actions.	Book Page 617
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., interest of justice, docket congestion.	Book Page 618
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., interest of justice, First-to-File Rule.	Book Page 618
Transfer factors, Ed. Va., contingent on severing claims.	Book Page 619
Exceptions to the first to file rule.	Book Page 620
Transfer does not cure lack of personal jurisdiction at time of suit.	Book Page 621
Transfer to a could-have-sued jurisdiction, retains jurisdiction.	Book Page 621
District Court case familiarity.	Book Page 621
Third Circuit mandamus Transfer Law.	Book Page 622
28 USC 1406 - Cure or waiver of defects.	Book Page 622

Burden of proof, dismissal for improper venue.	Book Page 623
Transfer when venue is improper.	Book Page 623
28 USC 1407 - Multidistrict litigation.	Book Page 624
Transfer, common questions of fact.	Book Page 626
28 USC Chapter 89— District Courts; Removal of Cases from State Courts (sections 1441 to 1455).	Book Page 627
28 USC 1446 Procedure for removal of civil actions.	Book Page 627
Beginning of the 1446(b), 30 day period for defendant to remove.	Book Page 628
E.D. Va. Transfer Law.	Book Page 629
28 USC 1447 - Procedure after removal generally.	Book Page 629
28 USC 1447(d) - Reviewability of an order remanding to state court.	Book Page 630
28 USC 1447(d) exceptions.	Book Page 632
28 USC Chapter 91— United States Court of Federal Claims (sections 1491 to 1509)	Book Page 632
28 USC 1491 Claims against United States generally; actions involving Tennessee Valley Authority.	Book Page 632
Jurisdiction of the Court of Federal Claims.	Book Page 633
Jurisdictional test - "acting on behalf of the government".	Book Page 633
Court of Federal Claims lacks DJ and injunctive relief jurisdiction.	Book Page 633
Court of Federal Claims lacks mandamus jurisdiction.	Book Page 634
The Court of Federal Claims lacks jurisdiction over implied-in-law contracts	Book Page 634
28 USC 1498 Patent and copyright cases.	Book Page 635
1498(a) - Patent used or manufactured by or for the United States.	Book Page 637
No private liability for infringement by the US Government.	Book Page 637
1498(a) is not limited to direct infringement.	Book Page 638
1498(a) liability linked to the scope of the patent holder's rights	Book Page 638
28 USC Chapter 99—General Provisions (section 1631).	Book Page 639
28 USC 1631 Transfer to cure want of jurisdiction.	Book Page 639
28 USC 1631 - Transfer to cure want of jurisdiction.	Book Page 640
Transfer for lack of subject matter jurisdiction.	Book Page 640
28 USC Chapter 111— General Provisions (sections 1651 to 1659).	Book Page 640
28 USC 1651 - Writs.	Book Page 641
Writ of Mandamus.	Book Page 641
Inadequacy of any other remedy.	Book Page 642
Disclosure of the privileged communication	Book Page 642
Supreme Court has discretion to entertain bypass mandamus petitions.	Book Page 643
28 USC Chapter 123— Fees and Costs (sections 1911 to 1932).	Book Page 643
28 USC 1927 - Counsel's liability for excessive costs.	Book Page 644
1927, excludes filing of a baseless complaint.	Book Page 644
1927, second circuit requirement for claim to be (1) entirely without color and (2) brought in	

bad faith.	Book Page 644
Colorable claim analysis.	Book Page 645
28 USC Chapter 131—Rules of Courts (sections 2071 to 2077).	Book Page 646
28 USC 2071 Rule-making power generally.	Book Page 646
28 USC 2072 Rules of procedure and evidence; power to prescribe.	Book Page 646
PART VI—PARTICULAR PROCEEDINGS (sections 2201 to 4105).	Book Page 646
28 USC Chapter 151— Declaratory Judgments (sections 2201 to 2202).	Book Page 646
28 USC 2201- Creation of remedy (declaratory judgment).	Book Page 647
Purpose of the DJ act.	Book Page 647
DJ, rule against piecemeal litigation.	Book Page 647
DJ, piecemeal litigation at the district court.	Book Page 647
DJ, piecemeal litigation on appeal.	Book Page 648
28 USC 2202 - Further Relief (declaratory judgment).	Book Page 648
DJ jurisdiction.	Book Page 648
DJ jurisdiction, case or controversy requirement.	Book Page 648
DJ jurisdiction, question of law.	Book Page 649
DJ jurisdiction, burden of proof to establish jurisdiction.	Book Page 649
DJ jurisdiction, evaluated claim-by-claim.	Book Page 649
DJ jurisdiction, standard of review, for DJ jurisdiction determination, is de novo	Book Page 650
DJ jurisdiction, standard of review, for findings underlying a DJ jurisdiction determination, is clear error.	Book Page 650
DJ action, does not shift substantive burdens.	Book Page 651
DJ jurisdiction, determination of DJ jurisdiction is not a merits determination	Book Page 651
DJ action, burden of proving infringement is a substantive burden, remains on patentee	Book Page 651
DJ jurisdiction factors.	Book Page 652
DJ jurisdiction factor, meaningful preparation to conduct potentially infringing activity	Book Page 652
DJ jurisdiction factor, immediacy.	Book Page 652
DJ jurisdiction factor, reality.	Book Page 653
Patentee takes a position that puts the DJ plaintiff in the position of either pursuing arguably illegal behavior or abandoning that which DJ plaintiff claims a right to do.	Book Page 654
Patentee actions showing intent to enforce a patent.	Book Page 654
DJ jurisdiction factor, definite and concrete dispute requirement.	Book Page 655
DJ definite and concrete dispute test, conduct of patentee and asserted infringer	Book Page 656
DJ specific personal jurisdiction requirements.	Book Page 657
DJ specific personal jurisdiction factors.	Book Page 657
DJ specific personal jurisdiction factor, enforcement campaign in the target forum	

.....	Book Page 657
DJ specific personal jurisdiction factor, exercise of specific personal jurisdiction must be reasonable and fair.	Book Page 658
DJ jurisdiction by licensee, license termination is not required.	Book Page 659
DJ jurisdiction, covenant not to sue removes DJ jurisdiction.	Book Page 659
DJ jurisdiction, preventing FDA approval of ANDA provides DJ jurisdiction	
.....	Book Page 659
DJ action, courts have discretion to dismiss DJ action, even if DJ jurisdiction exists	
.....	Book Page 660
<i>Wilton/Brillhart</i> abstention doctrine.	Book Page 661
<i>Colorado River</i> abstention doctrine.	Book Page 661
28 USC Chapter 161 United States as a Party Generally (sections 2401 to 2416)	
.....	Book Page 662
28 USC 2403 Intervention by United States or a State; constitutional question. . .	Book Page 662
28 USC 2412 Costs and fees.	Book Page 663
2412, excludes awarding the prevailing party costs and fees of attorneys. . . .	Book Page 663
Title 35 USC Patents.	Book Page 664
Part I—United States Patent and Trademark Office (Sections 1 to 42).	Book Page 664
35 USC Chapter 1— Establishment, Officers and Employees, Functions (sections 1 to 14)	
.....	Book Page 664
35 USC 1 Establishment.	Book Page 664
35 USC 2 Powers and Duties.	Book Page 665
Must execute legislative directive.	Book Page 665
MPEP entitled to judicial notice as the agency's official interpretation.	Book Page 665
Issuance of allowed applications.	Book Page 665
Issuance of applications involved in ongoing proceedings.	Book Page 666
PTO may to issue a patent to a winning party in an application-application interference	
.....	Book Page 666
Grant and denial of petitions.	Book Page 668
Office Policy to Issue Valid Patents.	Book Page 668
Presumption of regularity of administrative proceedings.	Book Page 668
Authority to require a terminal disclaimer, 37 CFR 1.321.	Book Page 669
Authority to require information, 37 CFR 1.105.	Book Page 669
Application ownership disputes.	Book Page 670
35 USC 2(b)(D) - Regulation of Attorneys and Agents.	Book Page 670
PTO license to practice, preempts state limitations.	Book Page 670
PTO license to practice, Federal Circuit has jurisdiction to review PTO decision	
.....	Book Page 671

37 CFR PART 11- Representation of Others Before the United States Patent and Trademark Office..	Book Page 671
Filing for a party that lacks standing is improper.	Book Page 672
Referrals by a non-practitioner third party.	Book Page 672
Duty to know that client has consented to liaison or agent..	Book Page 674
No authority to stay reexamination pending outcome of district court validity determination	Book Page 674
35 USC 3 Officers and Employees.	Book Page 675
35 USC 3(a) Under Secretary and Director.	Book Page 675
35 USC 3(b) - Officers and Employees of the Office.	Book Page 675
Prosecution laches as a basis for rejection during examination.	Book Page 675
Prosecution laches rejection, elements.	Book Page 676
Prosecution laches during examination, factors.	Book Page 676
Prosecution laches, applicant response at the end of the period authorized by statute, not relevant..	Book Page 676
Prosecution laches, PTO delay, not relevant.	Book Page 677
Prosecution laches, filing continuing applications with claims that read on the competitors' products, not relevant..	Book Page 677
Prosecution laches, applicant failure to advance prosecution, relevant.	Book Page 677
35 USC 6 Patent Trial and Appeal Board.	Book Page 677
35 USC 6(a) - In General.	Book Page 677
Binding precedent for the Board.	Book Page 678
35 USC 6(b) - Duties.	Book Page 679
Duty to review and examine all claims presented - multiplicity..	Book Page 679
35 USC 6(c) - Panels.	Book Page 680
37 CFR 1.2.	Book Page 680
35 USC Chapter 2— Proceedings in the Patent and Trademark Office (sections 21 to 27)	
.	Book Page 681
35 USC 21 Filing date and day for taking action..	Book Page 681
35 USC 23 Testimony in Patent and Trademark Office cases	Book Page 681
35 USC 24 Subpoenas, witnesses.	Book Page 681
"contested cases".	Book Page 682
35 USC 25 Declaration in lieu of oath..	Book Page 683
35 USC 26 Effect of defective execution..	Book Page 683
35 USC 27 Revival of applications; reinstatement of reexamination proceedings	Book Page 684
.	Book Page 684
35 USC Chapter 3— Practice Before Patent and Trademark Office (sections 31 to 33)	
.	Book Page 684
35 USC 32 Suspension or exclusion from practice.	Book Page 684
Jurisdiction for judicial review of action under 35 USC 32.	Book Page 684
35 USC 32 does not preempt state regulation.	Book Page 685
Conflicts of interest, Ethical duties to clients.	Book Page 685

Disqualification.....	Book Page 685
"knowledge of the likelihood" of license or suit.....	Book Page 686
"subject matter conflicts".....	Book Page 686
Terms of engagement agreement.....	Book Page 687
"claim shaving,".....	Book Page 687
"reasonably anticipated" need for an opinion.....	Book Page 687
Jurisdiction over petition or motion to disqualify.....	Book Page 687
Burden of proof to disqualify counsel.....	Book Page 688
Former attorney representing adverse party.....	Book Page 688
Attorney Expert Witness Conflicts of Interest.....	Book Page 689
Meaning of "substantially related".....	Book Page 689
Court will not scour the record for supporting evidence.....	Book Page 689
Effect of listing all firm attorneys in a power of attorney.....	Book Page 690
PTAB determinations of credibility.....	Book Page 690
"presumed that the confidences were shared ".....	Book Page 690
Ethical obligations of attorneys representing the Government.....	Book Page 691
Applicable code of professional responsibility in the USPTO.....	Book Page 691
Privity and Personal Jurisdiction over patent prosecutors.....	Book Page 691
35 USC 33 Unauthorized representation as practitioner.....	Book Page 693
35 USC Chapter 4— Patent Fees; Funding; Search Systems (sections 41 to 42)	
.....	Book Page 693
35 USC 41 Patent fees; patent and trademark search systems.....	Book Page 693
Small entity, Paris Convention equal treatment limitation.....	Book Page 693
37 CFR 1.28(c) exclusively governs whether abandonment results from deficient payment of issue fee or maintenance fee due to incorrect claim to small entity status.....	Book Page 693
Submission of a 1.28(c) fee deficiency payment, when accepted by the PTO, is effective to correct the patentee's error.....	Book Page 694
Small entity fee payment and inequitable conduct.....	Book Page 695
Erroneous payment of small entity fees, intent to deceive.....	Book Page 695
37 CFR 1.27(a) - Definition of small entities.....	Book Page 695
37 CFR 1.27(a)(2) - Small Business concern.....	Book Page 696
13 CFR 121.802 What size standards are applicable to reduced patent fees programs?	
.....	Book Page 696
Definition of SBA “affiliates”.....	Book Page 696
35 USC 41(c)(2) Effect on Rights of Others.....	Book Page 696
Intentional delay, definition, a deliberately chosen course of action or inaction	
.....	Book Page 698
35 USC 42 Patent and Trademark Office funding.....	Book Page 700
Part II—Patentability of Inventions and Grant of Patents (Sections 100 to 212)	
.....	Book Page 700

35 USC Chapter 10— Patentability of Inventions (sections 100 to 105)	Book Page 700
35 USC 100 Definitions.....	Book Page 701
35 USC 100(f) - Inventor (applicable to post AIA cases).....	Book Page 701
35 USC 100(g) - Joint Inventor (applicable to post AIA cases).....	Book Page 701
35 USC 100(h) - Joint Research Agreement (applicable to post AIA cases).....	Book Page 701
35 USC 100(i) - Effective Filing Date (applicable to post AIA cases).....	Book Page 701
35 USC 100(j) - claimed invention (applicable to post AIA cases).....	Book Page 702
35 USC 101 Inventions patentable.....	Book Page 702
Patent eligibility, standard of review, de novo.....	Book Page 702
35 USC 101 - The patent eligibility requirement.....	Book Page 703
101, defines the type of subject matter that is eligible for patent protection ...	Book Page 703
101, contains no novelty requirement.....	Book Page 703
101, novelty is not relevant to determining eligibility for patent protection... ..	Book Page 703
101, the patent eligibility inquiry is only a threshold test for patentability... ..	Book Page 703
101, machine-or-transformation test, claims encompassing both people and machines performing actions do not tie the claim to a novel machine.....	Book Page 703
101, machine-or-transformation test, requires transformation of physical objects or substances.....	Book Page 704
101, a “process” is not defined by the machine or transformation test.....	Book Page 704
101, a “process” does not categorically exclude business methods.....	Book Page 704
101, a general method of engaging in business transactions is not a patentable “process”	Book Page 705
Supreme Court-created exceptions or limits to 101 patent eligibility: laws of nature, natural phenomena, and abstract ideas.....	Book Page 705
Federal Circuit-created exceptions to 101 patent eligibility: printed matter... ..	Book Page 705
101, abstract ideas are not patentable processes (<i>Bilski, Benson, Flook, and Diehr</i>)	Book Page 706
Abstract idea, an algorithm used to convert binary code decimal numbers to equivalent pure binary numbers, is like a law of nature, which cannot be the subject of a patent (<i>Benson</i>)	Book Page 706
Abstract idea, a formula for computing a number cannot be the subject of a patent (<i>Flook</i>)	Book Page 706
Abstract idea, manipulating several abstract ideas is an abstract idea.....	Book Page 707
101, processes that too broadly preempt the use of a natural law are patent ineligible (preemption).....	Book Page 708
Preemption, process patent that claims a natural law, but not significantly more, is not patentable.....	Book Page 708
Preemption, process patent that claims a natural law, and involve well-understood, routine, conventional activity previously engaged in by researchers in the field, is not patentable	Book Page 709
Preemption, consideration whether ordered combination of steps add more than well-	

understood, routine, conventional activity previously engaged in by researchers in the field
..... [Book Page 709](#)
101, isolated products of nature are patent ineligible. [Book Page 710](#)
Isolated products of nature, not patent eligible merely because it has been isolated
..... [Book Page 710](#)
101, DNA claims that define severed chemical bonds relative to naturally occurring DNA
would create a nonnaturally occurring molecule. [Book Page 710](#)
101, cDNA is patent eligible because it is not naturally occurring. [Book Page 711](#)
Merely requiring generic computer implementation of claims drawn to the abstract idea of
intermediated settlement fails to transform that abstract idea into a patent-eligible invention
..... [Book Page 711](#)
101, preemption policy concern. [Book Page 711](#)
101, absence of preemption. [Book Page 712](#)
101, obviousness and anticipation are distinct from subject matter eligibility. . [Book Page 712](#)
101, *Mayo/Alice* two-step test for patent eligibility. [Book Page 713](#)
 Alice step 1, abstract ideas category. [Book Page 713](#)
 Application of step 1 of two-step test. [Book Page 715](#)
 Application by the Supreme Court. [Book Page 715](#)
 Application by the Federal Circuit. [Book Page 715](#)
 Decisional process. [Book Page 715](#)
 Specification relevant in both *Alice/Mayo* steps. [Book Page 716](#)
 Comparison of claims at issue to prior 101 decisions. [Book Page 716](#)
Alice, step 1, pharma tech related cases. [Book Page 716](#)
 Using a natural product in unnatural quantities to alter a patient's natural state, not ineligible
 [Book Page 716](#)
 Specific treatment formulations that incorporate natural products, not ineligible
 [Book Page 717](#)
 Product made by combining two naturally occurring products that has synergistic effects, not
ineligible. [Book Page 717](#)
 Specific method of treatment reciting steps of carrying out a dosage regimen, not ineligible
 [Book Page 718](#)
 Specific method of treatment, no preemption. [Book Page 720](#)
 New and useful method of preserving hepatocyte cells, not ineligible. [Book Page 720](#)
 Method for detecting a "relationship between the signature nucleotides and [Mycobacterium
tuberculosis] MTB," ineligible. [Book Page 721](#)
Alice, step 1, computer tech related cases. [Book Page 722](#)
 Unconventional technological solution to a technological problem, not ineligible
 [Book Page 722](#)
 Collecting, analyzing, and displaying data, ineligible. [Book Page 722](#)
 Unconventional user interface that allows a user to avoid the burdensome task of navigating
through spreadsheets, not ineligible. [Book Page 723](#)
 Graphical user interface increasing user efficiency, ineligible. [Book Page 724](#)

Method that improves information stored in a database, ineligible.	Book Page 724
Computer implementing non computerized activity, ineligible.	Book Page 724
Communicating over a network, ineligible.	Book Page 725
Innovations in mathematical calculations, ineligible.	Book Page 726
Generically encoding data, ineligible.	Book Page 726
Delivering user-selected media content to portable devices, ineligible.	Book Page 727
Production of a desired result, without any limitation on how to produce that result, ineligible	Book Page 727
General idea of customizing a user interface, ineligible.	Book Page 727
Providing out-of-region access to regional broadcast content, ineligible.	Book Page 728
An improvement to computer functionality, eligible.	Book Page 728
Improved user interface for computing devices, eligible.	Book Page 729
Configuring a memory system based on the type of processor connected to the memory system, eligible.	Book Page 730
Claims that focus on specific means or method that improves the relevant technology, instead of merely automating known techniques.	Book Page 731
Computer process that performs a novel and advantageous function, eligible.	Book Page 731
Computer process that performs a novel and advantageous function need not be tied to a machine or transform a physical article, to be eligible.	Book Page 732
Method of financing reciting generic computer elements, ineligible.	Book Page 733
Difficulty of the programming functionality is immaterial unless details are recited in the claims.	Book Page 733
Classifying an image and storing the image based on its classification, ineligible	Book Page 733
Use of existing handwriting and voice capture technologies, ineligible.	Book Page 734
Solving a specific problem in the realm of computer networks, eligible.	Book Page 734
Providing a network defense system that monitors network traffic in real-time to automatically detect large-scale attacks, eligible.	Book Page 735
Assignment of specified functions among a computer's components to improve computer security, eligible.	Book Page 736
Claim reciting limitations that define general steps with minimal detail, when supported by a specification that makes clear that the claim presents a technological solution to a technological problem, eligible.	Book Page 737
Method of conducting a wagering game, ineligible.	Book Page 738
Novelty in implementation of an abstract idea is not an <i>Alice</i> step 1 factor.	Book Page 738
<i>Alice</i> step 2, inventive concept sufficient to transform.	Book Page 738
Application of step 2 of two-step test.	Book Page 741
Application of step 2, by the Supreme Court.	Book Page 741
Application of step 2, by the Federal Circuit.	Book Page 742
Whether a claim element or combination of elements is well-understood, routine and conventional is a question of fact.	Book Page 748
General considerations for 101 analysis.	Book Page 749

<i>DDR Holdings</i> Internet problem, Internet solution analysis.	Book Page 750
Adding “computer-aided” is insufficient to render an otherwise patent ineligible claim, eligible.	Book Page 752
“treat claim 2 as a process claim”.	Book Page 752
“signals, standing alone” are not patent eligible manufactures.	Book Page 753
“machine-readable storage medium”.	Book Page 753
“purely mental steps”.	Book Page 754
Step of “informing the patient”.	Book Page 754
“depend entirely on the use of mental processes”.	Book Page 754
Printed matter doctrine.	Book Page 755
Two step analysis for printed matter.	Book Page 755
“operativeness is a prerequisite to validity”.	Book Page 757
A references whose teachings “could obviously be made operative,” is available as prior art	Book Page 757
35 USC 101 - The separate statutory class requirement.	Book Page 758
Patent claims must be limited to one statutory class.	Book Page 758
Method claims reciting structure comply with 101.	Book Page 759
Utility patents claiming plants comply with 101.	Book Page 759
35 USC 101 - The utility requirement, “useful”.	Book Page 760
Utility is a question of fact.	Book Page 760
Utility is a substantive requirement for patentability.	Book Page 760
An invention is patentable only if it has specific and substantial utility.	Book Page 760
The substantial utility (also known as the practical utility) requirement, for pharmaceutical patents.	Book Page 760
A process is only patentable if it provides a specific benefit in its currently available form	Book Page 761
Practical utility must be disclosed where such utility would not be obvious.	Book Page 762
The PTO cannot reject a claim of an application disclosing a utility for the claim, unless it has reason to doubt the objective truth of the disclosed utility.	Book Page 762
Evidence of any utility is sufficient when the claim does not specify a utility.	Book Page 762
Claims to products having immediate utility, utility as starting materials or intermediates that lead to useful product, meet the utility requirement.	Book Page 763
35 USC 101 - The single patent per invention requirement, “a patent” (Double Patenting)	Book Page 763
Double Patenting is a question of law.	Book Page 763
The single patent requirement prohibits two patents claiming the same subject matter and two patents claiming obvious variations of the same subject matter.	Book Page 763
Two patents claiming different statutory classes are not claiming the same subject matter	Book Page 764
35 USC 101 - Non-statutory double patenting.	Book Page 764
Basis for judicial rule against double patenting.	Book Page 765
Double patenting is an issue of law, reviewed de novo.	Book Page 765

Obviousness-type double patenting, definition.....	Book Page 765
Obviousness-Type Double Patenting is an extension of same invention double patenting	Book Page 766
Applicable tests for OTDP is a question of law.	Book Page 766
An applicant electing to file two applications with claims to obvious variations of one another forecloses entitlement to the two-way test.....	Book Page 766
One-way test for OTDP, general rule.	Book Page 767
Two-way test for OTDP, narrow exception to the general rule.	Book Page 767
Burden of proof to show OTDP invalidity is clear and convincing.	Book Page 769
Secondary indicia evidence in obviousness-type double patenting.	Book Page 769
Patent that issues after but expires before another patent.	Book Page 770
A post-URAA patent (1) with a relatively earlier effective filing and (2) a relatively later issue date than another post-URAA, is a double patenting reference against the other post-URAA patent.	Book Page 770
A post-URAA patent having (1) the same effective filing date as a pre-URAA patent and (2) a relatively earlier expiration date than the pre-URAA patent, is not a double patenting reference against the pre-URAA patent.....	Book Page 770
OTDP between design and utility patents.....	Book Page 771
"applications were never commonly owned".	Book Page 771
"disclosure must not be used as prior art".....	Book Page 771
Later developed alternative process.	Book Page 772
"focus on the earlier claimed compound".....	Book Page 773
Method claim to a disclosed utility in a prior patent.....	Book Page 773
Domination and patentable distinctness.	Book Page 774
Domination, definition.	Book Page 774
37 CFR 1.321 - Terminal disclaimer, requirement for common ownership.	Book Page 775
A terminal disclaimer filed after the issuance of a patent, but filed timely relative to an infringement suit involving the patent, may obviate a double patenting defense of invalidity	Book Page 775
Consonance violation allows rejection of a division application for double patenting	Book Page 776
35 USC 101 Doctrine of election of priority by a common assignee.	Book Page 776
Doctrine of election, definition.	Book Page 776
Third parties are not bound by an assignee's election of priority.	Book Page 777
Doctrine of election, miscellaneous issues.	Book Page 778
35 USC 102 Conditions for patentability; novelty [Post-AIA].	Book Page 779
35 USC 102 [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 780
102, novelty, definition, compliance with section 102.	Book Page 781
Anticipation under 102 also renders claim obvious under 103.	Book Page 781
"on sale" means the same thing pre-AIA and post-AIA.	Book Page 781
Sale of a ready-for-patenting invention, that does not make the details of the invention available to the public, is "on sale" within the meaning of 35 USC 102.....	Book Page 782

Conditions under which on sale bar applied to method and process patents. . .	Book Page 783
Anticipation.	Book Page 784
Anticipation is a question of fact.	Book Page 784
Single embodiment requirement.	Book Page 785
Single reference requirement.	Book Page 785
Any prior art species or embodiment covered by the claim.	Book Page 785
Any prior art alternative covered by the claim.	Book Page 786
All the elements "in the same form and order as in the claim".	Book Page 786
"arranged or combined in the same way as in the claim"	Book Page 786
Test for whether disclosure of a limited number of combinations discloses the claimed combination - the "at once envisage" test.	Book Page 787
"limited number of specific preferences from a specifically defined group". . .	Book Page 788
Ambiguous and vague references do not anticipate.	Book Page 789
Proportions based upon patent drawings not indicated to be drawn to scale do not anticipate	Book Page 789
Anticipation requires the prior art to be enabling.	Book Page 792
Descriptions of new plant varieties must enabling to be prior art.	Book Page 792
Foreign sales of the plants or seeds may provide enablement, for publication of plant patent	Book Page 792
Anticipation relying upon enablement based upon sale requires a showing that the skilled artisan would have known of the availability via the sale.	Book Page 793
Ambiguous teaching does not support anticipation rejection.	Book Page 793
Burden of proof of anticipation during prosecution.	Book Page 794
Availability of a reference as prior art.	Book Page 794
Abandoned experiment is not prior art.	Book Page 794
"bound by the statements ... in his declaration to the PTO".	Book Page 795
Admission of prior art in the specification and claims.	Book Page 795
Judicial Estoppel.	Book Page 797
Judicial estoppel, based upon a 37 CFR 1.324 petition to correct inventorship	Book Page 799
Quasi-Estoppel and Judicial Estoppel Respecting Patentability.	Book Page 799
35 USC 102(a) [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 802
102(e), inherent anticipation.	Book Page 803
Definition of inherency - A PHOSITA would recognize that the missing descriptive matter is necessarily present in the thing described in the reference.	Book Page 803
Inherency, may not be established by probabilities or possibilities.	Book Page 803
Inherency, undisclosed optimal condition within broad disclosure are not inherent	Book Page 804
Inherency, picking, choosing, and combining, "sufficient specificity" requirement	Book Page 804
Inherency, prima facie case, burden shifting to appellant.	Book Page 805
Inherency, reliance upon non-prior art data.	Book Page 806

Inherency, reliance upon disclosed but not claimed manufacturing variables.	Book Page 806
35 USC 102(b) [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 806
Statutory bar events - 102(b) availability.	Book Page 806
<i>Pfaff v. Wells</i> - “ready for patenting”.	Book Page 807
Offer for sale prior to when invention ready for patenting.	Book Page 807
Whether a reference qualifies as a “printed publication” under § 102(b) is a legal conclusion based on underlying factual findings.	Book Page 808
Printed publication, key inquiry is accessibility	Book Page 808
Public accessibility is a question of fact that reviewed for substantial evidence	Book Page 809
Printed publication, "Printed" meaning extends to recording on any medium.	Book Page 809
Printed publication must enable to qualify as prior art.	Book Page 810
Printed publication, proof of date of availability.	Book Page 810
Printed publication, accessibility requirement.	Book Page 811
Accessibility test, whether an interested researcher would have been sufficiently capable of finding the reference and examining its contents.. . . .	Book Page 812
Accessibility test, availability to other than the creators.. . . .	Book Page 813
Public accessibility test, posting to open listserve.	Book Page 813
Public accessibility, prominence inquiry relates to the channel through which the references were publicized.	Book Page 814
Public accessibility, website inquiry, whether interested users of the website could have located the reference using reasonable diligence.. . . .	Book Page 815
Public accessibility, repository inquiry, whether the repository indexes its documents or otherwise categorizes them by subject matter.	Book Page 815
Public accessibility inquiry, proof of actual access not required.	Book Page 816
Printed publication fact dependent cases.	Book Page 816
Patent applications.	Book Page 816
Periodical whose prior issues had routinely been shelved in a library	Book Page 817
Foreign patent on display for public view.	Book Page 818
Database's functionality allowing search of keywords for author, title, and abstract	Book Page 819
Database indexed by title for a given year, author name, and unique sequence number	Book Page 819
Material distributed at meetings and conferences.	Book Page 820
Reference not distributed to the public, but shown to a variety of viewers.	Book Page 821
Materials posted on the FDA's Website.	Book Page 823
Non enabling reference does not anticipate.	Book Page 824
Anticipation and incorporation by reference.. . . .	Book Page 825
Incorporation test.	Book Page 825
PHOSITA ability to deduce what a host document aims to incorporate.. . . .	Book Page 825
"detailed particularity, clearly indicating the specific material for incorporation"	

.....	Book Page 825
"clearly indicate where that material is found in the various documents" . . .	Book Page 826
Incorporation is a question of law.	Book Page 827
Statutory bar events.	Book Page 828
Public use.	Book Page 828
Public use is a question of law.	Book Page 828
Inventor's own prior commercial use, albeit kept secret, may constitute a public use or sale under section pre-AIA 102(b).	Book Page 829
Another's secret prior commercial use, is not a pre-AIA 102(b) bar.	Book Page 830
Definition of public use.	Book Page 831
On-sale or public use, totality of the circumstances test.	Book Page 831
Proof necessary show a prior public use.	Book Page 832
Available as prior art against third parties.	Book Page 832
public use policies.	Book Page 832
"public did not see the inner workings".	Book Page 833
Public use applied to software.	Book Page 833
On sale Bar.	Book Page 833
Question of law.	Book Page 833
<i>Pfaff</i> test.	Book Page 834
Composition is ready for patenting when reduced to practice.	Book Page 834
Identity and motive of the seller is not relevant.	Book Page 834
Proof of conception is not required.	Book Page 834
Sale indicates utility and appreciation.	Book Page 835
Knowledge for chemical form of sold composition is not relevant.	Book Page 835
"secrecy, or legal monopoly".	Book Page 835
"license to practice" process did not trigger the on-sale bar.	Book Page 837
"exempting licenses under a patent from the on-sale bar".	Book Page 837
Offer for sale.	Book Page 838
Offer for sale "in the United States".	Book Page 842
"within the United States".	Book Page 843
FOB shipping does not define locus of sale.	Book Page 844
"what was offered for sale".	Book Page 844
"generating interest in a potential infringing product".	Book Page 844
"directed to a consumer in the United States".	Book Page 845
Definition of experimental use.	Book Page 845
Experimental use is an exception to a 102(b) bar.	Book Page 845
Experimental use is a question of law.	Book Page 846
Factors involved in determining if use is experimental.	Book Page 846
Averments in request for FDA approval	Book Page 847
Experimental use and reduction to practice.	Book Page 847
Testing required to show	Book Page 847
Experimental use exception to on sale bar.	Book Page 847

Experimental use exception to 102(b) bar limited to the inventors	Book Page 848
Control and customer awareness factors.	Book Page 849
Enumerated objective experimental use factors.	Book Page 849
35 USC 102(c) [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 849
35 USC 102(d) [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 851
"patented" means "a formal bestowal of patent rights".	Book Page 851
"when the patentee's rights under the patent become fixed".	Book Page 852
"not prior art provisions".	Book Page 852
German design right is 102(d) bar.	Book Page 853
120 benefit avoids 102(d) bar.	Book Page 853
35 USC 102(e) [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 854
102(e), diversity of inventorship in continuing applications.	Book Page 856
102(e), date is not a Foreign Priority date.	Book Page 857
102(e), prior art date based upon a provisional application.	Book Page 857
The 102(e) date of a CIP application.	Book Page 859
"application disclosing the patentable invention".	Book Page 859
Pre 11/29/2000 PCT applications.	Book Page 863
35 USC 102(f) [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 863
Requirement to actually have invented the subject matter claimed.	Book Page 863
"§ 102(f) is a prior art provision for purposes of § 103".	Book Page 864
Joint inventor.	Book Page 864
Naming correct inventive entity is a condition of patentability.	Book Page 865
Burden of proof of derivation.	Book Page 866
"admissible for the purpose of the derivation issue".	Book Page 866
derivation is an issue of fact.	Book Page 866
"standard for finding communication".	Book Page 867
Derivation may be from a third party.	Book Page 867
Burden of proof of derivation from the third party.	Book Page 868
"difficult to understand why additional discovery is needed".	Book Page 868
102(f), confidentiality and the absence of any teachings of how to accomplish a stated goal do not preclude 102(f) availability.	Book Page 868
Naming patent attorney as an inventor.	Book Page 869
35 USC 102(g) [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 869
Conception.	Book Page 870
Proof of conception of a count.	Book Page 871
Proof of conception of claims.	Book Page 872
Proof of appreciation.	Book Page 873
Conception in the United States.	Book Page 875
Conception of a species.	Book Page 876
Originality.	Book Page 876
Originality - identical benefit dates.	Book Page 877

Diligence.....	Book Page 878
Test for diligence - “reasonably continuous diligence”.....	Book Page 878
Test for diligence - Lack of unreasonable delay.....	Book Page 878
Diligence, rule of reason analysis.....	Book Page 879
Diligence - Work on improvements and evaluation of alternatives.....	Book Page 881
Diligence, complete lack of evidence.....	Book Page 881
Activities directed to showing diligence.....	Book Page 882
Diligence for activities outside the United States.....	Book Page 884
Attorney Diligence.....	Book Page 884
"excuses for inactivity".....	Book Page 885
"spurring".....	Book Page 887
Reduction to practice (RTP).....	Book Page 887
RTP is a question of law.....	Book Page 887
Actual reduction to practice (ARTP) requirements.....	Book Page 887
ARTP requirement (1), must embody all limitations of the count.....	Book Page 888
ARTP requirement (2), must know invention works for its intended purpose..	Book Page 889
ARTP requirement (2), testing showing invention.....	Book Page 889
ARTP requirement (2), testing must show invention worked beyond a probability of failure	Book Page 889
ARTP requirement (2), requires appreciation of a utility (intended purpose). .	Book Page 889
ARTP (2) requires showing of a utility (intended purpose).....	Book Page 890
ARTP requirement (2), what constitutes sufficient testing.....	Book Page 890
ARTP requirement (2), what constitutes sufficient testing, principles.....	Book Page 890
ARTP requirement (2), showing solution to the problem intended to be solved	Book Page 891
ARTP requirement (2), intended purpose defined by counts and specifications	Book Page 891
Constructive reduction to practice (CRTP).....	Book Page 892
Specification must show possession and invention.....	Book Page 892
CRTP, foreign application.....	Book Page 893
CRTP, abandoned application.....	Book Page 893
Reissue application.....	Book Page 894
Requirement for corroboration.....	Book Page 894
Corroboration of conception.....	Book Page 895
Corroboration of a reduction to practice.....	Book Page 896
Corroboration of a public use.....	Book Page 898
Question of law.....	Book Page 899
Reduction to practice may be by the inventor’s agent.....	Book Page 900
Inurement.....	Book Page 900
"uncommunicated recognition".....	Book Page 901
Senior and junior party status, effective and actual filing dates.....	Book Page 902
Actual reduction to practice.....	Book Page 902

Testing	Book Page 904
Actual reduction to practice “in the United States”	Book Page 905
Indicia of an actual reduction to practice	Book Page 906
The requirements for antedating a reference - 37 CFR 1.131	Book Page 906
Possession of obvious variations	Book Page 907
Right to make a claim	Book Page 908
Incompetence of inventor’s priority testimony	Book Page 908
Prima facie date of invention	Book Page 909
102(g), conception plus diligence applies to 103	Book Page 912
All inventions in the United States qualify as prior art	Book Page 913
constructive reduction to practice	Book Page 915
Same standard for constructive reduction to practice for claims to foreign and domestic applications	Book Page 917
Constructive reduction to practice proves conception	Book Page 917
Publication is not constructive reduction to practice	Book Page 918
Possession of the invention	Book Page 918
Abandonment, Suppression or concealment	Book Page 919
Burden of proof on abandonment, suppression, or concealment	Book Page 921
Abandonment versus concealment	Book Page 921
"abandonment of work on"	Book Page 922
"abandonment of that constructive reduction to practice"	Book Page 922
Suppression or concealment of the invention	Book Page 923
Abandonment applied as a defense in infringement litigation	Book Page 928
Effect of renewed activity after suppression or concealment	Book Page 929
35 USC 102 - Design patent anticipation	Book Page 930
Design patent anticipation, based solely upon the ordinary observer test	Book Page 930
Design patent anticipation, the ordinary observer test	Book Page 931
Design patent anticipation, must be "identical in all material respects"	Book Page 931
Design patent anticipation, minor differences cannot prevent a finding of anticipation	Book Page 932
35 USC 102 - Plant patent anticipation	Book Page 932
35 USC 103 Conditions for patentability; non-obvious subject matter [Pre-AIA]	Book Page 932
35 USC 103 Conditions for patentability; non-obvious subject matter [Post-AIA]	Book Page 933
Obviousness is a question of law based on underlying factual findings	Book Page 934
Obviousness, burden of proof, to show by clear and convincing evidence	Book Page 934
Obviousness, constitutional limits	Book Page 934
Obviousness, codified judicial precedents embracing the <i>Hotchkiss</i> condition	Book Page 935
Obviousness, restatement of the <i>Hotchkiss</i> test by <i>Graham</i>	Book Page 935

Obviousness, <i>Graham</i>	Book Page 936
Obviousness test, determination based upon knowledge of a PHOSITA.	Book Page 936
Obviousness test, POSA deemed aware of all relevant technology.	Book Page 937
Obviousness, burden of proof, during examination is on the PTO	Book Page 937
Obviousness, burden of proof, burden does not shift for a claim to a combination having a particular property.	Book Page 937
Obviousness test, combination of familiar elements yielding predictable results	Book Page 937
Obviousness test, combination of old elements providing functions of individual elements	Book Page 939
Obviousness test, teaching away plus discovery enabling combination to work together	Book Page 939
Obviousness test, expansive and flexible.	Book Page 940
Obviousness, motivation, <i>KSR</i> expanded analysis to include application of logic, judgment, and common sense of a POSA.	Book Page 940
Obviousness test, <i>ex post</i> reasoning and hindsight.	Book Page 941
Obviousness test, motivation, based upon any known need or problem in the field of endeavor.	Book Page 941
Obviousness test, motivation, disclosure of that element in one reference and a disclosure of particular utility for that kind of element in another reference.	Book Page 941
Obviousness test, motivation to try a finite number of identified predictable solutions to a problem.	Book Page 942
Obviousness, predictable variation of well known system using a technique well known in the art.	Book Page 942
Obviousness, pursuing limited set of known options within one's technical grasp	Book Page 942
Obviousness test, motivation to combine and a reasonable expectation of success	Book Page 943
Obviousness test, <u>O'Farrell 1</u> : "vary all parameters or try each of numerous possible choices"	Book Page 944
Obviousness test, <u>O'Farrell 2</u> : "field of experimentation, where the prior art gave only general guidance".	Book Page 944
Obviousness test, reasonable expectation of success.	Book Page 944
Obviousness, issues relating to factual findings.	Book Page 945
Findings, resting on an incorrect claim construction.	Book Page 945
Findings, presence of a motivation to combine is a question of fact.	Book Page 945
Findings, court must make a finding of motivation to combine.	Book Page 945
Findings, required to support an obviousness conclusion.	Book Page 946
Findings, <i>KSR</i> mandated a wider diversity of sources to bridge the gap between the prior art and a conclusion of obviousness	Book Page 946
Findings, implicit basis for motivation to combine.	Book Page 947

Motivation, reliance upon common sense requires a reasoned explanation that avoids conclusory generalizations.	Book Page 947
Motivation, district court must articulate its reasoning invoking “common sense” with sufficient clarity for review.	Book Page 947
Findings, evidentiary basis for common knowledge and common sense.	Book Page 948
Common sense typically invoked to provide motivation to combine.	Book Page 948
Common sense reasoning, application of new technology to an existing system	Book Page 949
Common sense only invoked to provide missing limitation in limited circumstances	Book Page 950
Common sense applied to provide a missing limitation requires searching inquiry for reasoned basis.	Book Page 950
Common sense, missing limitation, application of searching review of the record	Book Page 951
The phrase "ordinary creativity" is synonymous with "common sense".	Book Page 951
Common sense, whether limitation is central or peripheral to the claim.	Book Page 952
Common sense, conclusion that missing step equivalent to prior art step insufficient to justify conclusion of obviousness.	Book Page 952
Need for <i>Graham</i> findings.	Book Page 953
Per se rules inapplicable to obviousness analysis.	Book Page 953
Level of skill of a POSA.	Book Page 954
Question of fact.	Book Page 954
"the prior art itself [may] reflect[] an appropriate level"	Book Page 955
"Factors that may be considered".	Book Page 955
"educational level of the inventor".	Book Page 956
"determined by appeal to the references of record".	Book Page 957
"background of the witnesses who testified at trial".	Book Page 957
"sources for a motivation to combine".	Book Page 957
Reliance upon "subjective preferences" to evaluate evidence is improper	Book Page 958
Prima facie obviousness in district court, procedure.	Book Page 958
PTO rule definition of “prima facie case of unpatentability”.	Book Page 959
Prima facie obviousness during examination before the PTO.	Book Page 959
Prima facie obviousness - definition.	Book Page 959
USPTO has the initial burden of production in examination.	Book Page 960
PTO bears burden of showing a claimed property of a composition claim would have been obvious.	Book Page 961
"very large number of possible distinct compositions".	Book Page 961
Claimed composition overlap the ranges disclosed in the prior art is prima facie obvious	Book Page 961
Rebutting a presumption that claimed composition overlap the ranges disclosed in the prior art.	Book Page 962
Claimed sub-range within prior art range, obvious to try sub-range.	Book Page 962

Claimed sub-range within prior art range of one of many variables, obviousness of variable selection.	Book Page 963
Overlapping range law applies to IPR proceedings.	Book Page 963
Prima facie case for rejection must be supported by substantial evidence.. . . .	Book Page 963
Applicant's disclosure cannot be relied upon to provide suggestion and reasonable expectation of success.	Book Page 964
The prior art must show that there is a reasonable likelihood of success.	Book Page 964
Not obvious to vary all parameters or numerous possible choices or explore a new technology, with only general guidance.	Book Page 965
Chemical compounds, structural similarity.	Book Page 966
Chemical compounds, common properties and related properties.	Book Page 967
New treatment using a known compound.	Book Page 968
Suggestion to combine references or make the modification.	Book Page 968
Prima facie case of obviousness.	Book Page 969
"organization of information and its interrelationships".	Book Page 970
"matter is not functionally related".	Book Page 970
"mere size is not ordinarily a matter of invention".. . . .	Book Page 971
"range or other variable within the claims".	Book Page 971
A claim quantifying results expected from a prior art process would have been obvious	Book Page 972
Analogous prior art.	Book Page 972
A reference is only available to show 103 obviousness, if it qualifies as analogous prior art	Book Page 972
Whether a reference is analogous art is an issue of fact.	Book Page 973
Analogous prior art tests: (1) same field of endeavor; (2) reasonably pertinent to the particular problem with which the inventor is involved.	Book Page 973
Analogous prior art test (1), whether the reference is from the same field of endeavor	Book Page 974
Field of endeavor, evidence, patent application.	Book Page 974
Field of endeavor, evidence, IDS submissions.	Book Page 974
Field of endeavor, not limited to a particular focus within a given field.	Book Page 975
Same field of endeavor, references that relate to the same general industry.. . . .	Book Page 975
Analogous prior art test (2), the reference must be reasonably pertinent to the particular problem the inventor set out to solve.	Book Page 976
Reasonably pertinent, what a PHOSITA would reasonably have consulted in seeking a solution to the problem that the inventor was attempting to solve.	Book Page 976
Reasonably pertinent analysis must identify and compare the problems or purposes to which the reference and claimed invention relate.	Book Page 976
Relevant purposes of an invention are those relating to solving a problem, and not to admitted prior art.	Book Page 977
Reasonably pertinent analysis must be carried out through the lens of a PHOSITA who is considering turning to art outside her field of endeavor.	Book Page 977

Reasonable pertinence analysis only requires a PHOSITA to understand the portion of a reference relevant to solving the problem.	Book Page 977
Reasonably pertinent, evidence and reasoning of pertinence.	Book Page 978
Contrary "Board's opinion ... after ... final judgment".	Book Page 980
Teachings of a reference.	Book Page 980
"for everything it <i>teaches</i> ".	Book Page 980
"for all that it discloses".	Book Page 980
"fairly teaches in combination with the prior art as a whole".	Book Page 981
teaching away, discouraging.	Book Page 981
teaching away, must be commensurate with the claims.	Book Page 984
Teaching away distinguished from motivation to combine.	Book Page 984
Different as opposed to undesirable properties; tradeoffs.	Book Page 986
Variation of result-effective variables.	Book Page 986
Motivation is a question of fact.	Book Page 986
"Obviousness is determined from the vantage point of".	Book Page 987
"identification of each claimed element in the prior art".	Book Page 987
"known disadvantages".	Book Page 987
"desirability, and thus the obviousness".	Book Page 987
combination destroys disclosed reference utility.	Book Page 988
"make it unsuitable for its intended purpose".	Book Page 988
"consider the invention as a whole".	Book Page 989
"obvious to experiment".	Book Page 989
inferences drawn from a reference.	Book Page 989
Integration of parts.	Book Page 989
"reasonable expectation of success".	Book Page 990
Reasonable expectation of success linked to the solution to problem confronted by the inventor.	Book Page 990
Procedure for determining existence of reasonable expectation of success.	Book Page 991
reasonable expectation of success is a question of fact.	Book Page 991
Standard of review of a PTAB finding of reasonable expectation of success is substantial evidence.	Book Page 991
Reasonable expectation of success, case examples.	Book Page 992
Reasonable expectation of success, evidentiary weight.	Book Page 994
Significant weight to contemporaneous statements.	Book Page 994
Expectation what results of experiments would show.	Book Page 994
Economic factors, motivation.	Book Page 995
Prima facie obviousness of a compound requires obvious process to make the compound.	Book Page 996
Invention as a whole of a compound includes way to produce the compound.	Book Page 996
Prior art must enable the claimed subject matter.	Book Page 996
Advancement in the art test.	Book Page 997
"Lead compound".	Book Page 997

Method of use case law distinguished from lead compound case law.....	Book Page 1000
"obvious to experiment" - selective hindsight	Book Page 1001
"omission of an element".....	Book Page 1001
species encompassed within the described genus.	Book Page 1001
Evidence does not need to be in the specification.	Book Page 1002
Claim indefiniteness due to mixed statutory classes does not did not preclude a determination of obviousness.	Book Page 1002
Obviousness determination cannot be based upon speculation as to claim scope	Book Page 1002
"description of a single species".....	Book Page 1003
Obvious matter of "design choice".....	Book Page 1004
Secondary indicia of non-obviousness.	Book Page 1004
Secondary indicia evidence "must be considered <u>before</u> a conclusion on obviousness"	Book Page 1004
Standard of review on nexus determinations.	Book Page 1005
Patentee burden of production to show nexus.....	Book Page 1006
"prima facie case of nexus".	Book Page 1006
Objective evidence need only be reasonably commensurate with the scope of the claims.	Book Page 1009
Absence of evidence of secondary considerations.....	Book Page 1010
Prior attempts to produce a desired result.	Book Page 1010
Skepticism of others.....	Book Page 1011
Weight accorded testimony.	Book Page 1011
Nexus presumed upon a showing that the commercially successful product embodies the claimed features.....	Book Page 1011
Conclusory testimony of nexus raises a presumption of nexus.....	Book Page 1012
Commercial success.....	Book Page 1012
Rationale for relevance of commercial success.	Book Page 1012
Evidence of commercial success.....	Book Page 1013
Relationship of commercial success to scope of claim.....	Book Page 1013
Effect of blocked market entry on commercial success.	Book Page 1013
ANDA filing, per se, is not evidence of commercial success.....	Book Page 1015
Effect of blocking patents on commercial success.	Book Page 1015
Copying.	Book Page 1016
Definition - efforts to replicate a specific product.	Book Page 1016
Copying and ANDA showing requirements.....	Book Page 1018
Unexpected results.....	Book Page 1018
Inherent property may be unexpected.....	Book Page 1020
Unpredictability does not require expectation of failure.....	Book Page 1020
Invention made by routine experimentation is not necessarily obvious.....	Book Page 1020
Comparative data showings.	Book Page 1021
Definition of closest prior art, for comparative data.....	Book Page 1021

"activity ... not ... possessed by a prior art compound"	Book Page 1022
Timing of recognition by the inventors.	Book Page 1023
long felt but unresolved need.	Book Page 1023
Praise of the invention.	Book Page 1024
Praise of features not in the prior art.	Book Page 1025
License.	Book Page 1025
Single prior art reference obviousness, combining embodiments or selecting from elements	Book Page 1026
Single prior art reference obviousness, requires a showing of reasonable expectation of success.	Book Page 1026
Single prior art reference obviousness, defendant has burden to show motivation to combine elements or embodiments.	Book Page 1027
Single prior art reference obviousness, examiner must provide findings supporting motivation and expectation of success for combining embodiments.	Book Page 1027
Single prior art reference obviousness, petitioner has burden to show obviousness of missing limitation based common sense and general background knowledge	Book Page 1027
Single prior art reference obviousness, petitioner has burden to show obviousness of missing limitation based upon routine optimization.	Book Page 1028
Single prior art reference obviousness, requirements apply to documents incorporated by reference.	Book Page 1028
35 USC 103 - Design patent obviousness.	Book Page 1029
Design patent obviousness, standard for motivation to modify.	Book Page 1029
Design patent obviousness, designer of ordinary skill	Book Page 1029
Design patent obviousness, ordinary observer determining whether to combine prior art	Book Page 1029
Design patent obviousness, "design must be evaluated as a whole"	Book Page 1030
Design patent obviousness, two step process.	Book Page 1030
Design patent obviousness, first step, primary reference requirement.	Book Page 1031
Design patent obviousness, first step, part 1, discern the correct visual impression	Book Page 1031
Design patent obviousness, first step, part 2, primary reference having basically the same visual impression.	Book Page 1032
Design patent obviousness, expert testimony.	Book Page 1033
Design patent obviousness, secondary considerations.	Book Page 1033
Design patent obviousness, step 2, other references suggest "a design that has the same overall visual appearance as the claimed design".	Book Page 1034
Design patent obviousness, motivation must be based upon ornamental features	Book Page 1034
Design patent obviousness, prior art consideration must focus on visual appearance, not use	Book Page 1035
Design patent obviousness, design prior art consideration must focus on actual appearances, not design concepts.	Book Page 1035

Design patent obviousness, design reference combinations must be based upon "specific design characteristics", not design concepts.	Book Page 1035
35 USC 103 - Plant patent obviousness.	Book Page 1036
35 USC 104 [Repealed].	Book Page 1036
35 USC Chapter 11— Application for Patent (sections 111 to 123).	Book Page 1036
35 USC 111 Application.	Book Page 1037
35 USC 111(a)(4) - Filing date.	Book Page 1038
35 USC 112 Specification [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 1039
35 USC 112 Specification [Post-AIA].	Book Page 1039
35 USC 112(a) [Post-AIA], formerly 112, first paragraph.	Book Page 1040
35 USC 112(a) - The written description requirement,.	Book Page 1040
Written description, "possession as shown in the disclosure"	Book Page 1040
Written description, separate requirement from enablement.	Book Page 1040
Written description, existence is a question of fact.. . . .	Book Page 1041
Written description, predictability.. . . .	Book Page 1042
Written description, criticality.. . . .	Book Page 1043
Written description, test for compliance.. . . .	Book Page 1045
Written description, test based solely upon specification.	Book Page 1047
Written description, obvious errors in the specification are correctable.. . . .	Book Page 1047
Written description, does not require that every claimed element be illustrated in the figures	Book Page 1048
Written description, definition of continuation application.	Book Page 1048
Written description, burden of proof for CIP parent filing date.	Book Page 1049
Written description, features disclosed to be undesirable or inferior.	Book Page 1049
Written description, of a genus.	Book Page 1050
Written description, post priority date evidence showing existence of species, showing lack of representativeness of genus claim.	Book Page 1051
Written description, post priority date evidence showing existence of species, showing lack of enablement of a claimed genus.	Book Page 1051
Written description, requirement to describe the claimed invention, in addition to the ability to make and use.	Book Page 1052
Written description, of a specie.. . . .	Book Page 1052
Written description, no express disclosure of either claimed property (permanently affixed) or lack of claimed property (removable).	Book Page 1053
Written description, "unfinished invention".	Book Page 1053
Written description, relying upon properties correlated to a structural limitation	Book Page 1054
Written description, functional claiming of genus.	Book Page 1054
Written description, correlated to solutions to problems.	Book Page 1056
Written description, distinct from enablement.	Book Page 1058
Written description, purpose.	Book Page 1060

Written description, original claims.	Book Page 1060
Written description, showing possession of the invention.	Book Page 1062
Written description, determined based upon time of filing.	Book Page 1063
Written description, does not require literal support in the specification.	Book Page 1064
Written description, reasonably conveys support for the concept.	Book Page 1064
Written description, drawings may also be considered.	Book Page 1065
Written description, overreaching by claiming broader than disclosure.	Book Page 1065
Written description, ranges.	Book Page 1066
Written description, disclosure of imprecise range, "about"	Book Page 1068
Written description, chemical genus subgenus.	Book Page 1069
Written description, omitted essential element.	Book Page 1070
Written description, any part of specification is sufficient.	Book Page 1070
Written description, specification includes incorporation by reference material	Book Page 1071
Written description, applicability of portions of incorporated document distinct from fact of incorporation.	Book Page 1072
Written description, incorporation, benefit and priority.	Book Page 1074
Written description, essential material, 37 CFR 1.57(c) limitation on incorporation by reference	Book Page 1074
Written description, incorporation "at the initial filing stage".	Book Page 1075
Written description, incorporation where "120 priority is at issue".	Book Page 1075
Written description, CIP claim is not incorporation by reference.	Book Page 1076
Written description, identity of incorporation to "reasonable examiner".	Book Page 1077
Written description, identity of incorporation to "to a person of ordinary skill"	Book Page 1078
Written description, incorporation by reference to a deposit.	Book Page 1078
Written description, limited incorporation by reference.	Book Page 1079
Written description, negative claim limitations.	Book Page 1079
Written description, inherency.	Book Page 1082
Written description, inherency, requirements for showing inherent support for copied claims	Book Page 1084
Written description, over breadth.	Book Page 1085
Written description, "therapeutically effective amount".	Book Page 1085
Written description, interpretation of the specification, inherent support for a limitation	Book Page 1087
Burden of proof, interference, showing that a claim lacks written description	Book Page 1087
35 USC 112(a) - The enablement requirement, "The specification shall ... enable any person skilled in the art to which it pertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to make and use the same.	Book Page 1087
Enablement, presumption of validity applies to enablement of an issued patent	Book Page 1087

Enablement, question of law.....	Book Page 1088
Enablement, tests.....	Book Page 1088
Enablement, requirement for some experimentation does not preclude enablement	Book Page 1088
Enablement, requirement for undue experimentation does preclude enablement	Book Page 1088
Enablement, definition of undue experimentation.	Book Page 1089
Enablement, factors for determining whether undue experimentation is required	Book Page 1090
Enablement, must exist for the full scope of the claim.....	Book Page 1091
Enablement, enabling less than the full scope of the claim fails the requirement	Book Page 1092
Enablement, the claim must define elements taught to be essential.	Book Page 1093
Enablement, requires identification of species having claimed functional property without undue experimentation.....	Book Page 1093
Enablement, does not require claims to exclude inoperative embodiments when one skilled in the art would know which factors limited the claimed subject matter to operative embodiments	Book Page 1094
Enablement, does not require express disclosure of every embodiment within the scope of the claim.....	Book Page 1094
Enablement, requirement directed to one skilled in the art as of the application’s filing date	Book Page 1094
Enablement, determined based upon the effective filing date.....	Book Page 1094
Enablement, a deposit providing public access, after grant, complies with the requirement	Book Page 1095
Enablement, a deposit is required prior to grant of the patent, not prior to filing	Book Page 1095
Enablement, is independent of the number of claims presented for examination	Book Page 1095
Enablement, probative value of inability to commercialize.	Book Page 1096
Enablement, manufacturing specification are not required for enablement. ...	Book Page 1096
Enablement, block diagrams are not required.....	Book Page 1096
Enablement, scope of enablement vis a vis scope of claims.....	Book Page 1097
Enablement, programming generally deemed enabling.	Book Page 1097
Enablement, may be met by animal tests or in vitro data.	Book Page 1098
Enablement, of the full scope of the claim, as construed.	Book Page 1098
35 USC 112(a) - The best mode requirement, “The specification ... shall set forth the best mode contemplated by the inventor or joint inventor of carrying out the invention.”...	Book Page 1098
Best mode, purpose.....	Book Page 1099
Best mode, limited to invention claimed.....	Book Page 1099
Best mode, two step process for determining compliance.	Book Page 1099
Best mode, compliance determined by inventor state of mind at time of filing	

.....	Book Page 1100
Best mode, question of fact.....	Book Page 1100
Best mode, burden of proof for invalidity, clear and convincing.	Book Page 1100
Best mode, no requirement to update when filing continuing applications. . .	Book Page 1100
Best mode, unclaimed components.....	Book Page 1101
Best mode, production details not required for compliance.	Book Page 1101
35 USC 112(a) - Design patent written description requirement.....	Book Page 1101
Design patent written description, unclaimed boundary lines.	Book Page 1103
Design patent written description, Design patent description, enablement, and definiteness linked.	Book Page 1104
35 USC 112(b) [post-AIA] (formerly 112 second paragraph).....	Book Page 1104
35 USC 112(b) - The Claims requirement, “The specification shall conclude with one or more claims”.....	Book Page 1104
Claims, definition and function.	Book Page 1104
35 USC 112(b) - The Definiteness requirement, “particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming ... subject matter”.....	Book Page 1106
Definiteness, purpose is to adequately notify the public of the patentee’s right to exclude	Book Page 1106
Definiteness, issue of law.	Book Page 1106
Definiteness test, whether the claims, read in light of the specification and prosecution history, fail to inform, with reasonable certainty.	Book Page 1106
Definiteness, specifying which method should to test for infringement.....	Book Page 1107
Definiteness, "terms of degree" that provide certainty.	Book Page 1107
Definiteness, subjective claim recitations.....	Book Page 1110
Definiteness, may rely upon the prosecution history.	Book Page 1111
Definiteness, claiming essential cooperating elements.....	Book Page 1111
Definiteness, antecedent basis.....	Book Page 1112
Definiteness, negative limitations.....	Book Page 1112
Definiteness, functional language.....	Book Page 1112
Definiteness, defining properties of elements of the claim, at different times	Book Page 1115
Definiteness, factor, ability to apply the prior art to the claim.	Book Page 1115
Definiteness, means plus function claim recitations.....	Book Page 1115
Definiteness, standard of review for pending claims.	Book Page 1118
Definiteness, evidence based upon litigation conduct.	Book Page 1119
Definiteness, inconsistency between asserted claim construction and patent specification	Book Page 1120
Definiteness, limitation on extrinsic evidence of indefiniteness in post issuance litigation	Book Page 1120
Definiteness, claim defining "separate statutory classes ... in a single claim," is indefinite	Book Page 1121
35 USC 112(b) - Design patent definiteness requirement.....	Book Page 1122

Design patent definiteness, inconsistent drawings.	Book Page 1122
Design patent definiteness, inconsistency between drawings and claim language	Book Page 1122
Design patent definiteness, assessed from the perspective of an ordinary observer	Book Page 1123
Design patent, definiteness, design capable of being viewed and understood in two-dimension through a plan or planar view that clearly defines the perspective.	Book Page 1123
35 USC 112(b) - The Regards requirement, claims "the inventor ... regards as the invention"	Book Page 1124
Inventor regards as the invention, issue of law.	Book Page 1124
Inventor regards as the invention, evidence considered during examination.	Book Page 1124
Regards test, claim limitation that is nonsensical in view of the specification	Book Page 1126
35 USC 112(b) - Claim construction.	Book Page 1126
Claim construction, PTAB, standard of review.	Book Page 1126
Claim construction, district court, standard of review.	Book Page 1127
Claim construction, theories.	Book Page 1127
Claim construction, procedure.	Book Page 1128
Claim construction, rules.	Book Page 1128
Claim construction rule, subject to <i>stare decisis</i>	Book Page 1128
Claim construction rule, collateral estoppel or deference, based upon PTAB findings of a prosecution history disclaimer.	Book Page 1129
Claim construction rule, courts construe, not alter, claims.	Book Page 1129
Claim construction rule, limitations from specification not read into claims.	Book Page 1130
Claim construction rule, must give effect to all claim recitations.	Book Page 1130
Claim construction rule, two claim elements cannot read on the same thing.	Book Page 1131
Claim construction, the same for both validity and infringement analyses	Book Page 1132
Claim construction rule, "terms that are recited inferentially"are not necessarily considered to be elements of the claim.	Book Page 1132
Claim construction rule, construction that is "facially nonsensical 'cannot be correct.'"	Book Page 1132
Claim construction rule, construction that renders claimed invention inoperable viewed with extreme skepticism.	Book Page 1132
Claim construction rule, different terms in a claim connote different meanings	Book Page 1133
Claim construction rule, doctrine of claim differentiation.	Book Page 1133
Claim construction rule, doctrine of claim differentiation, limitations.	Book Page 1134
Claim construction rule, doctrine of claim differentiation, same recitation in different claims	Book Page 1135
Claim construction rule, doctrine of claim differentiation, uniformity of construction across a patent family.	Book Page 1136
Claim construction rule, doctrine of claim differentiation, dependent claims added by reissue	

or reexamination cannot broaden an original independent claim. [Book Page 1136](#)

 Claim construction rule, functional recitations, define something by what it does rather than by what it is. [Book Page 1136](#)

 Claim construction rule, claim limitation imposed by reference to functional requirements [Book Page 1137](#)

 Claim construction rule, claims capabilities covers anything “reasonably capable” [Book Page 1137](#)

 Claim construction rule, non functional use recitations in apparatus claims do not limit the scope of the claim. [Book Page 1138](#)

 Claim construction rule, process claim, structural recitations that affect the method in a manipulative sense, are limitations. [Book Page 1139](#)

 Claim construction rule, product by process claim, formally proper. [Book Page 1139](#)

 Claim construction rule, product by process claim, infringement requires use of the claimed process. [Book Page 1139](#)

 Claim construction rule, product by process recitation in a method claim construed as product by process limitation. [Book Page 1140](#)

 Claim construction rule, definition of a Markush group. [Book Page 1140](#)

 Claim construction rule, definition of a *Beauregard* claim, treatment as method claims [Book Page 1141](#)

 Claim construction rule, ambiguous limitations construed to have narrower meaning [Book Page 1142](#)

 Claim construction rule, *Phillips* standard for construing ambiguous claims to preserve validity. [Book Page 1142](#)

 Claim construction rule, obligation of the court to construe. [Book Page 1144](#)

 Claim construction rule, construction cannot be changed following close of jury trial [Book Page 1144](#)

 Claim construction rule, procedure, party cannot belatedly challenge construction, if it agreed to leave construction to the jury. [Book Page 1145](#)

 Claim construction rule, obligation of the court to construe, scope of. [Book Page 1145](#)

 Claim construction rule, court’s construction not bound by arguments of the parties [Book Page 1148](#)

 Claim construction rule, jury may not add additional limitations to judicially construed claim [Book Page 1148](#)

 Claim construction, based upon patent, as issued. [Book Page 1149](#)

 Claim construction rule, proffered disclaimer generally only binds the patent owner [Book Page 1149](#)

 Claim construction rule, claim terms given their ordinary and customary meaning to an ordinary artisan after reading the patent. [Book Page 1150](#)

 Claim construction rule, evidence considered consists of claims, specification, prosecution history, extrinsic evidence. [Book Page 1150](#)

 Claim construction rule, terms having "no accepted meaning in the art" cannot be construed broader than the disclosure [Book Page 1150](#)

Claim construction rule, based upon meaning of words "at the time of the invention"
..... [Book Page 1151](#)

Claim construction rule, claim terms construed based upon meaning of surrounding context
..... [Book Page 1151](#)

Claim construction rule, claims are construed "in the context of the entire patent"
..... [Book Page 1151](#)

Claim construction, should give effect to all terms in the claim.. [Book Page 1152](#)

Claim construction rule, claims are normally construed to read on the preferred embodiments
..... [Book Page 1153](#)

Claim construction rule, claims normally interpreted to read on embodiments
..... [Book Page 1153](#)

Claim construction rule, different constructions for claims to different embodiments
..... [Book Page 1154](#)

Claim construction rule, specification may define claim terms. [Book Page 1155](#)

Claim construction rule, claim incorporation by reference from the specification, permitted
where there is no practical way to define the invention in words. [Book Page 1157](#)

Claim construction rule, "Words ... by default interpreted in their structural sense"
..... [Book Page 1158](#)

Claim construction rule, weighing claim language against the specification. . [Book Page 1158](#)

Claim construction rule, whether claim terms have a plain and ordinary meaning
..... [Book Page 1159](#)

Claim construction rule, plain and ordinary meaning, method of treatment of a medical
condition. [Book Page 1159](#)

Claim construction rule, claims may expressly exclude certain alternatives. . [Book Page 1160](#)

Claim construction rule, method steps subject to a condition precedent. . . . [Book Page 1161](#)

Claim construction rule, method claims, factors for determining whether gerund recitations
define steps or functions. [Book Page 1161](#)

Claim construction rule, where "the patentee used the two terms interchangeably," they may
be given the same meaning. [Book Page 1162](#)

Claim construction rule, where the specification describes the preferred embodiment, as the
invention. [Book Page 1162](#)

Claim construction rule, construction based upon Abstract. [Book Page 1162](#)

Claim construction rule, claim terms not limited to particular disclosed embodiments
..... [Book Page 1163](#)

Claim construction rule, printed matter recitations, when limiting. [Book Page 1163](#)

Claim construction rule, mental step recitations, when limiting.. [Book Page 1164](#)

Claim construction rule, interpreting words, by default, in their structural sense, when they
connote with equal force a structural characteristic of the product or a process of manufacture
..... [Book Page 1165](#)

Claim construction rule, intended use recitations are non-limiting. [Book Page 1166](#)

Rule, intended use recitation, relation to inherency and anticipation.. . . . [Book Page 1166](#)

Rule, intended use recitation, adjectives describing a class may be a structural limitation

..... [Book Page 1167](#)

Claim construction rule, the doctrine of specification disavowal, also called specification disclaimer..... [Book Page 1167](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, standard for finding a disavowal..... [Book Page 1167](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, may expand claim scope..... [Book Page 1169](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, must be clear, but need not be explicit. . . . [Book Page 1169](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, using a term in a manner consistent with only a single meaning. [Book Page 1170](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, of method step sequence, by disavowing “specific details”

..... [Book Page 1170](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, implicit definition. [Book Page 1171](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, claim must be consistent with the specification

..... [Book Page 1172](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, claim cannot be construed more broadly than the description in the specification to read on prior art over which specification asserted improvement

..... [Book Page 1172](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, claim recitation used in specification to provide a direct contrast may limit claims..... [Book Page 1172](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, numeric limitations inherent to the claimed improvement

..... [Book Page 1173](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, claim scope tethered to specification. [Book Page 1173](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, "inescapable conclusion that the claimed invention must include"

..... [Book Page 1174](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, equating embodiment with the invention. . . [Book Page 1174](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, statement of preference is insufficient. . . . [Book Page 1175](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, when a process step is an essential part of an apparatus claim

..... [Book Page 1175](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, listing alternatives does not disavow undisclosed alternatives..... [Book Page 1176](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, phrases used interchangeably in the specification

..... [Book Page 1176](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, recitation of "the present invention," when describing the entire patent. [Book Page 1177](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, no disavowal when specification fails to indicate a limitation on the scope of the claim..... [Book Page 1180](#)

 Rule, specification disavowal, factors when the specification discloses a single embodiment..... [Book Page 1180](#)

 Claim construction rule, construction in view of the prosecution history, definition of prosecution history..... [Book Page 1181](#)

 Rule, prosecution history, demonstrating how the inventor understood the invention

..... [Book Page 1182](#)

 Rule, prosecution history, claims construed based upon related

..... [Book Page 1182](#)

Claim construction, prosecution history, characterization of specification during prosecution may limit the claims. [Book Page 1183](#)

Claim construction, prosecution history, PTAB must accept parties uniform position of claim dependency error. [Book Page 1184](#)

 Rule, prosecution history, remarks made by the examiner during reexamination
 [Book Page 1184](#)

 Rule, prosecution history, cannot extend claim scope beyond what the specification discloses. [Book Page 1185](#)

 Claim construction rule, doctrine of prosecution history disclaimer, definition
 [Book Page 1185](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, same general tenants as prosecution history estoppel
 [Book Page 1186](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, applicant argument that a reference is distinguishable on a particular ground. [Book Page 1186](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, by amendment, scope of disavowal commensurate with that required to overcome rejection. [Book Page 1187](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, remarks make during examination describing added claim limitation. [Book Page 1187](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, proponent bears the burden of proof
 [Book Page 1187](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, argument must be subject to only one reasonable interpretation. [Book Page 1188](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, made by applicant, not examiner. . . [Book Page 1188](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, failure to rebut examiner’s claim construction
 [Book Page 1188](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, applicant's remarks need not result in allowance to effect disclaimer. [Book Page 1189](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, applied to arguments made during IPR proceedings
 [Book Page 1189](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, scope of disclaimer. [Book Page 1190](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, applied to subsequent patents. [Book Page 1190](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, applied to patents derived from the same parent application. [Book Page 1190](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, scope of surrender is not limited to what is absolutely necessary to avoid a prior art reference. [Book Page 1191](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, stipulated claim constructions. [Book Page 1192](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, recision of disclaimer. [Book Page 1193](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, disavowal proffered during a proceeding where amendments are possible. [Book Page 1193](#)

 Rule, prosecution history disclaimer, intrinsic evidence, related applications
 [Book Page 1194](#)

 Rule, extrinsic evidence, considered only when intrinsic evidence is insufficient

..... [Book Page 1196](#)
Rule, extrinsic evidence, not probative if inconsistent with intrinsic evidence
..... [Book Page 1196](#)
Rule, extrinsic evidence, admission into evidence is discretionary with the court
..... [Book Page 1197](#)
Rule, extrinsic evidence, proper uses..... [Book Page 1197](#)
Rule, extrinsic evidence, generally less reliable than intrinsic evidence. . . [Book Page 1199](#)
Claim construction rules, extrinsic evidence, use of dictionary definitions. . . [Book Page 1199](#)
Rule, dictionary definitions, claim terms are construed to encompass all consistent
dictionary meanings..... [Book Page 1199](#)
Rule, dictionary definitions, may be consulted by the judge, before the written description
..... [Book Page 1200](#)
Claim construction rules, claim preambles..... [Book Page 1201](#)
Preamble, definition. [Book Page 1201](#)
Preamble, introductory words of a claim. [Book Page 1201](#)
Preamble, all that portion at the beginning of the claim preceding the colon.. [Book Page 1201](#)
Rule, preamble, whether a preamble is limiting is fact dependent, based upon the entire
patent record [Book Page 1202](#)
Rule, preamble, general rule is that preamble is not a limitation..... [Book Page 1203](#)
Rule, preamble, preamble is a limitation if it recites essential structure, steps, or is
necessary to give life, meaning, and vitality to a claim [Book Page 1203](#)
Rule, preamble, preamble is not a limitation if structurally complete invention such that
deletion of the preamble phrase does not affect the structure or steps of the claimed invention
..... [Book Page 1204](#)
Rule, preamble, preamble is not a limitation when it merely defines states a purpose or
intended use..... [Book Page 1206](#)
Rule, preamble, preamble is a limitation if it was relied upon during prosecution to
distinguish over prior art. [Book Page 1206](#)
Rule, preamble, method claim preamble, a second part of a preamble is a limitation if it
includes a term relied upon for antecedent basis in the body of the claim. [Book Page 1206](#)
Rule, preamble, method claim preamble, a preamble is a limitation if it includes a term
relied upon for antecedent basis in the body and those terms are intertwined with the rest of the
preamble..... [Book Page 1206](#)
Rule, preamble, a method claim preamble is a limitation if it defines manipulation of
particular structures that are identified and described only by the preamble, during a particular
sequence of events defined only by the preamble. [Book Page 1207](#)
Claim construction, transitional phrase, transition phrase, definition..... [Book Page 1207](#)
Claim construction, open and closed transition phrases..... [Book Page 1207](#)
Claim construction, effect of failure to include a transitional phrase..... [Book Page 1208](#)
Transitional phrase, comprising, does not exclude additional elements or steps
..... [Book Page 1208](#)
Transitional phrase, comprising, does not render each limitation or phrase within the claim

open-ended..... [Book Page 1208](#)

Transitional phrase, comprising followed by an element that "consists of" items listed in a Markush group, does not exclude other elements having the same property required for the Markush group..... [Book Page 1209](#)

Claim recitations equated with comprising: including; having; containing; and wherein [Book Page 1209](#)

Claim language indicating that every claim element having the function described for elements within the claimed Markush groups must be listed in the Markush group, is limiting [Book Page 1209](#)

Claim construction, "comprised of"..... [Book Page 1210](#)

Claim construction, "consisting of" or "consists of". [Book Page 1210](#)

Consisting of, claim element, creates a strong presumption that a claim element is closed [Book Page 1210](#)

Consisting of, "a member selected from the group consisting of A, B, and C," presumed to permit the member to be one and only one of A, B, or C. [Book Page 1210](#)

An indefinite article used in conjunction with a Markush grouping, may be limiting [Book Page 1211](#)

Consisting of, closed presumption, rare exceptions for aspects unrelated to the invention [Book Page 1212](#)

Consisting of, limits only the element set forth in clause in which it appears [Book Page 1213](#)

Consisting of, does not exclude DOE infringement. [Book Page 1213](#)

Claim construction, consisting essentially of, does not exclude components that do not "materially affect the basic and novel properties of the invention"..... [Book Page 1213](#)

Claim construction, consisting essentially of, question of fact, whether a component is material. [Book Page 1215](#)

Claim construction, transitional phrase, "consisting essentially of" may be defined by the specification..... [Book Page 1215](#)

35 USC 112(b) - Claim construction, particular words and phrases..... [Book Page 1215](#)

Recitation of indefinite articles "a" and "an". [Book Page 1215](#)

Recitation "a" has a meaning that depends upon context. [Book Page 1216](#)

Recitation "a statistical analysis request corresponding to two or more selected investments" [Book Page 1217](#)

Recitation "a [thing] ... for ... [A and B]". [Book Page 1217](#)

Recitation "assembl[ing] said video and audio components into an MPEG stream [Book Page 1217](#)

Recitation of definite articles "said" and "the," antecedent basis..... [Book Page 1218](#)

Recitation of conjunctive "and". [Book Page 1219](#)

Recitation "at least one of A and B" [Book Page 1219](#)

Recitation "and/or". [Book Page 1220](#)

Recitation "/" defines "or". [Book Page 1220](#)

Recitation "i.e." ("id est" or "that is") signals an intent to define the word to which it refers.

.....	Book Page 1220
Recitation "user information", password and its hash..	Book Page 1220
Recitation "user interface module"	Book Page 1221
Words directed to a plurality: Recitations "allocate" and "priority".....	Book Page 1221
Recitation "especially" defines a subset.	Book Page 1221
Recitation "at least one".	Book Page 1222
Claim construction, presumption that a prepositive or postpositive modifier preceding a series applies to each member of the series, presumption strengthened by the joining word "and"	Book Page 1222
.....	Book Page 1222
Claim construction, "a plurality of" means "at least two of".	Book Page 1223
Claim construction, presumption that a prepositive or postpositive modifier preceding a series applies to each member of the series, presumption strengthened as to a member of the series lacking an article preceding that member.	Book Page 1223
The Federal Circuit held that Claim construction, subsequent reference to a member of a series using the series modifier is decisive in concluding that the modifier applies to every member of the series.	Book Page 1224
Recitation "about", "approximately," in ranges..	Book Page 1224
Recitation "about", precision..	Book Page 1226
Recitation "at least about,"	Book Page 1226
Recitation "whereby".	Book Page 1227
Recitation "wherein".....	Book Page 1227
Recitation of probabilistic suffix "able" (obtainable).	Book Page 1227
Recitation "creating a database of..."	Book Page 1228
Recitation "only if".	Book Page 1228
Recitation "mechanism".	Book Page 1229
Recitations "adapted to" and "configured to".	Book Page 1229
Recitation "configured to".....	Book Page 1230
Recitations "operable to" and "capable of".....	Book Page 1231
Recitation "mountable".....	Book Page 1231
Recitation "adjustment".	Book Page 1232
Recitation "or otherwise".	Book Page 1232
Recitation "effective amount".....	Book Page 1233
Recitation "not interfering substantially".	Book Page 1233
Recitation "in an unobtrusive manner that does not distract a user"	Book Page 1233
Recitation "aesthetically pleasing".	Book Page 1234
Recitation "arranged to engage".	Book Page 1234
Recitation "adjacent".....	Book Page 1234
Recitation "integral".	Book Page 1235
Recitation "substantially".	Book Page 1235
Recitation "high frequency".	Book Page 1235
Recitation "data packet".	Book Page 1236
Recitation, that an apparatus claim element is "not removed ... prior to".....	Book Page 1236

Recitation, that a structure is “sized and shaped” for a purpose.	Book Page 1236
35 USC 112(b) - Design patent Claim construction.	Book Page 1237
Design claim construction, standards of review.	Book Page 1237
Design claim construction, rules.	Book Page 1237
Design claim construction rule, claim language specifying an article of manufacture can limit.	Book Page 1237
Design claim construction rule, distinguishing between ornamental and functional features	Book Page 1238
Design claim construction rule, scope is limited to ornamental aspects and does not extend to functional elements.	Book Page 1239
Design claim construction rule, improper to eliminate design elements that correspond to a functional feature.	Book Page 1240
Design claim construction rule, scope corresponds to particular ornamental designs of underlying functional elements.	Book Page 1240
Design claim construction rule, determining differences of claimed design compared to the prior art.	Book Page 1240
Design claim construction rule, function of the article is irrelevant.	Book Page 1241
Design claim construction rule, broken lines do not limit the claimed design	Book Page 1241
Design claim construction rule, doctrine of prosecution history estoppel applies	Book Page 1241
Design claim construction rule, canceling non-elected designs limits claim scope	Book Page 1241
Design claim construction rule, election during prosecution does not surrender subject matter within the scope of the elected invention.	Book Page 1242
Design claim construction rule, scope of design may be defined by a single plan or planar view.	Book Page 1242
Design patent, claim construction rule, jury instructions.	Book Page 1242
35 USC 112(b) Broadest Reasonable Interpretation, BRI, applied during examination	Book Page 1243
BRI, defined.	Book Page 1243
BRI, inferential recitations are not limiting.	Book Page 1244
BRI, product-by-process claims, process recitations are not limiting.	Book Page 1244
BRI, interpretation limited to what is reasonable in view of the specification	Book Page 1245
BRI, interpretation must be consistent with the specification.	Book Page 1246
BRI, interpretation must be made in light of the specification and teachings in the underlying patent.	Book Page 1247
BRI, inapplicable when claims are no longer subject to amendment.	Book Page 1247
BRI, specification disavowal, excludes configuration expressly disclaimed in the specification	Book Page 1247
BRI, prosecution history disclaimer, examiner's reasons for allowance may evidence	

applicant's disclaimer.....	Book Page 1248
BRI, prosecution history disclaimer, applicant's unambiguous remarks.....	Book Page 1248
35 USC 112(b) - Interference and Derivation claim construction (claim copying)	
.....	Book Page 1249
Claim copying rule, disclosure used to construe copied claims for determining whether they have written descriptive support.	Book Page 1249
Claim copying rule, <i>Agilent</i> applies to copied claim phrases	Book Page 1252
Claim copying rule, <i>Agilent</i> applies only to construction of a copied claim	
.....	Book Page 1252
Claim copying rule, based upon file history and interference history	Book Page 1253
Recitation “predetermined”.....	Book Page 1254
35 USC 112(d) (formerly 112, 4th Paragraph) - Reference In Dependent Forms	
.....	Book Page 1254
Compliance with 112(d) is a condition for patentability.....	Book Page 1255
Compliance requires specifying a further limitation of the subject matter claimed	
.....	Book Page 1255
Claiming a plurality is a further limit.	Book Page 1255
35 USC 112(f), formerly 112, 6th Paragraph, means plus function (MPF).....	Book Page 1256
MPF, de novo standard of review for the question whether a recitation invokes MPF construction.	Book Page 1256
MPF, determination of the claimed function and structure are matters of law	
.....	Book Page 1256
MPF, scope, covers the corresponding structure, material, or acts described in the specification and equivalents thereof.....	Book Page 1257
MPF, test for MPF construction.	Book Page 1257
MPF test, whether a POSA would understand the claim term to have a sufficiently definite meaning as the name for structure.....	Book Page 1257
MPF, a recitation is sufficiently definite if it defines a broad class of structures by either their structure or function.....	Book Page 1258
MPF, two-step process for determining if MPF construction applies.....	Book Page 1258
MPF, presumption arising from recitation of "means".....	Book Page 1258
MPF, presumption arising from recitation of "means" is not "strong".....	Book Page 1259
MPF, presumption when the claim term does not recite “means”.....	Book Page 1259
MPF, test for sufficiently definite structure.	Book Page 1259
MPF, test for sufficient structure for performing a claimed function.....	Book Page 1260
MPF, implication of recitation of functional language.....	Book Page 1260
MPF, Presumptively not Nonce words not substituting for “means,” examples	
.....	Book Page 1260
MPF, Not nonce, “digital processing unit”.....	Book Page 1260
MPF, Not nonce, “general purpose computer,” “central processing unit”..	Book Page 1261
MPF, Presumptively nonce words substituting for “means,” examples.....	Book Page 1261
MPF, Nonce words: GUI, code.	Book Page 1261

MPF, Nonce words: mechanism; means; element; device.....	Book Page 1261
MPF, Nonce words: circuit.	Book Page 1262
MPF, Nonce terms: access control manager.	Book Page 1262
MPF, Nonce terms: "a processor adapted to"; "a processor . . . programmed to"; "a processor . . . configured . . . to".	Book Page 1263
MPF, Nonce words: Effect of modifiers.	Book Page 1263
MPF, Nonce words: <i>Williamson</i> analysis of "module".	Book Page 1264
MPF, Overcoming the rebuttable presumption when the claim term does recite "means"	Book Page 1266
MPF, Recitation of "means" without recitation of corresponding function	Book Page 1266
MPF, Construction of "means" recited as performing plural functions. . . .	Book Page 1267
MPF, Recitation lacking "means" raises a presumption that MPF does not apply	Book Page 1269
MPF, Rebutting the presumption of the presence or absence of a "means" recitation requires evidentiary support.	Book Page 1269
MPF, Probative value of additional structure recited by dependent claims	Book Page 1270
MPF, Probative value of intent documented in the prosecution history. . .	Book Page 1270
MPF, Probative value of extrinsic evidence of structure.	Book Page 1270
MPF, Construing a MPF recitation is a two-step process.	Book Page 1271
MPF, procedure for construing a claim recitation.	Book Page 1271
MPF, requirement to construe MPF limitations as a whole	Book Page 1272
MPF, specification must clearly link or associate structure to the recited function	Book Page 1272
MPF, examples of determinations.	Book Page 1272
MPF, applies in PTO and Courts.	Book Page 1273
MPF recitation, patentability analysis must be based corresponding structure in the specification, not merely the recited function.	Book Page 1274
MPF, A claim is indefinite if the specification discloses insufficient structure disclosed to perform the function defined in a MPF recitation.	Book Page 1275
MPF, limited to recitations containing insufficient structure.	Book Page 1276
MPF, means being a general purpose computer.	Book Page 1276
MPF, disclosure must link structure and function.	Book Page 1279
MPF, sufficiency of disclosure based upon PHOSITA.	Book Page 1280
MPF, equivalent must have been available when claim issued.	Book Page 1281
MPF, DOE and MPF means analysis for known means.	Book Page 1281
MPF, construction not limited by prior art.	Book Page 1281
MPF, and incorporation by reference of prior art means.	Book Page 1282
MPF, test for structural equivalents to disclosed means.	Book Page 1282
MPF, distinguished from DOE.	Book Page 1283
MPF, function must literally be met.	Book Page 1283

MPF, admissibility of extrinsic evidence in construction.....	Book Page 1283
SPF: step plus function (SPF)	Book Page 1284
SPF: “step for” raises a presumption of construction under 112, ¶ 6].	Book Page 1285
MPF, Recitation of sufficient structure precludes MPF construction.....	Book Page 1285
MPF, Claim construction, term connoting specific structure is not a MPF recitation	Book Page 1288
35 USC 115 Inventor Oath or Declaration.....	Book Page 1288
35 USC 115(f) [Post-AIA].....	Book Page 1288
35 USC 116 - Inventors.	Book Page 1289
"requiring lack of deceptive intent".....	Book Page 1289
Attorney duty to name the correct inventors.....	Book Page 1289
Joint behavior requirement for joint inventorship.....	Book Page 1290
Standing regarding "pending patent applications".	Book Page 1290
35 USC 119 - Benefit of earlier filing date; right of priority.....	Book Page 1291
35 USC 119(a)-(d) - Foreign Priority.....	Book Page 1291
"mandatory provision".	Book Page 1292
"burden of establishing its entitlement".	Book Page 1293
"remedial purpose behind section 251".....	Book Page 1293
"during the pendency of that U. S. application".	Book Page 1293
" <u>Justus v. Appenzeller</u> not controlling".....	Book Page 1294
35 USC 119 “ requires that all intermediate applications in a priority chain contain a specific reference to the earlier-filed foreign application".	Book Page 1294
Under 35 USC 119, each application in a "chain" of priority applications need not have the foreign priority claim.	Book Page 1295
Priority may be perfected in a downstream US application.	Book Page 1295
Patent for a continuing application may be corrected to claim priority if priority was perfected in the parent application.....	Book Page 1296
Executing an application for patent, without filing, is insufficient for entitlement to 119 foreign priority.....	Book Page 1297
Foreign application was filed more than twelve months before the filing of the corresponding U.S. application.	Book Page 1297
The weekend/holiday exception applies to the 119 twelve month deadline... .	Book Page 1297
Patent is not entitled to foreign priority when the foreign application was filed by an entity "not acting on behalf of the U.S. applicant".....	Book Page 1298
Diversity of Inventorship between a US application and a foreign application does not preclude entitlement to foreign priority, or entitlement to benefit for an interference count	Book Page 1298
A foreign application priority to which is claimed in a US patent is not legal prior art under pre-AIA 35 USC 102(e).....	Book Page 1299
The movant has the burden of proof and duty of translating earlier filed non-English language documents into English to show entitlement to a date of invention.	Book Page 1299
The "same effect" in 119 and 120 does not refer to 102(e) prior art effect... .	Book Page 1300

35 USC 119(e) - Benefit of a provisional application.	Book Page 1301
Provisional and nonprovisional "must share at least one common inventor"..	Book Page 1301
Claim to provisional in abandoned application..	Book Page 1302
PCT Article 8(2)(b)..	Book Page 1303
35 USC 120 - Benefit of Earlier Date of Filing in the United States	Book Page 1304
Priority and benefit dates are questions of law.	Book Page 1304
Standard of Review..	Book Page 1304
35 USC 120 - "same effect"..	Book Page 1305
35 USC 120 - "similarly entitled".	Book Page 1305
35 USC 120 Benefit - Effect, claim acquires an earlier filing date if the claim does not introduce new matter.	Book Page 1305
Burden of Proof and Persuasion of entitlement to an earlier filing date.. . . .	Book Page 1306
Burden of proof of entitlement to benefit in ex parte prosecution.	Book Page 1306
Continuation of a reissue, benefit of reissue filing date.	Book Page 1307
Continuation-in-part, no presumption or entitlement to earlier filing date.. . .	Book Page 1307
Continuation-in-part, PTO examiner makes no determination..	Book Page 1307
35 USC 120 Benefit - Requirement for a Specific Reference to parent applications	
.	Book Page 1307
Specific Reference, each application in a chain must refer to all prior applications	
.	Book Page 1307
Specific Reference, failure of intermediate link in a benefit claim chain to include earlier links in the chain violates the "specific reference" requirement..	Book Page 1308
Specific Reference, incorporation by reference ineffective.	Book Page 1308
Specific Reference, effect of amending an intermediate application in a benefit claim chain by adding claims to benefit of prior applications.	Book Page 1309
Specific Reference, petition correcting the specific reference to an intermediate link in a benefit claim chain may during reexam be immediately effective.	Book Page 1309
Specific Reference, IPR non-institution decision based upon PTAB determination of compliance with specific reference requirement is not appealable..	Book Page 1309
Specific Reference, issuance of a reexam certificate correcting the "specific reference" in an intermediate link in a benefit claim chain, is effective..	Book Page 1309
Specific Reference, effect of amending an intermediate application in a benefit claim chain by removing existing claims to benefit to prior applications.	Book Page 1310
Specific Reference, disclaimer of benefit, permissible way to avoid loss of patent term	
.	Book Page 1310
Specific Reference, "compliance with both §§ 119 and 120"..	Book Page 1311
Specific Reference, must be present in each application in the chain..	Book Page 1311
Specific Reference, incorporation by reference to another patent is ineffective	
.	Book Page 1311
Specific Reference, reference to "this application"..	Book Page 1312
Specific Reference, test for interpreting a benefit claim..	Book Page 1312
Specific Reference, reciting incorrect relationships between the applications at issue	

.....	Book Page 1313
Specific Reference, a statement "such as" the one provided in Section 201.11.	
.....	Book Page 1313
35 USC 120 benefit - Applies to design patent claiming benefit to a utility patent application	
.....	Book Page 1313
35 USC 120 benefit - Requirement for 112 first paragraph support in parent.. . .	Book Page 1314
112 first paragraph support in parent, MPF recitations.	Book Page 1314
Written description, specification disclaimer in a parent application cannot be rescinded in child application..	Book Page 1314
35 USC 120 Benefit - Requirement for continuity of 112 first paragraph support	
.....	Book Page 1315
35 USC 120 Benefit - Requirement for continuity of inventorship..	Book Page 1315
35 USC 120 Benefit - Requirement for copendency.	Book Page 1316
Copendency, filing on the day of issuance of the parent application.	Book Page 1316
35 USC 120 Benefit - Requirement to disclose the best mode.	Book Page 1316
Definition of a continuation application.	Book Page 1318
Continuation practice.	Book Page 1319
35 USC 120 - 112 support, design patent.	Book Page 1320
CIP, an application is a CIP if its original claim is not supported by the parent application	
.....	Book Page 1320
"filing of a CIP application to overcome a PTO rejection".....	Book Page 1321
Benefit claim chains, older case law.....	Book Page 1321
Specific reference, reciting US 371 date and US application number is a specific reference to the PCT application and its filing date.....	Book Page 1323
Prosecution history disclaimer of a priority date.....	Book Page 1324
35 USC 121 - Divisional Applications.	Book Page 1324
121 does not authorize rejection of a Markush claim.....	Book Page 1324
Restriction of a Markush claim.....	Book Page 1324
Restriction resulting from election of species.....	Book Page 1325
Consonance.....	Book Page 1326
Test for Existence of Restrictable Species (Election of Species).....	Book Page 1327
Definition of Species, Species Claim, and Generic Claim.	Book Page 1327
Definition of species, species claim, and genus claims..	Book Page 1327
Review via Petition, no Appeal.....	Book Page 1327
Divisional of a divisional.	Book Page 1328
Plural "non-elected inventions".....	Book Page 1330
There can be no restriction unless the claims are presented and entered... .	Book Page 1330
Strict test for "clarity and detail to show consonance".....	Book Page 1331
35 USC 121, requirement for immunity.	Book Page 1333
Withdrawal of restriction requirement.	Book Page 1334
35 USC 121 inapplicable to reissue of CIP, which strips out new matter. . . .	Book Page 1335
Design patent, accession to a restriction requirement, bars infringement of surrendered subject	

matter.	Book Page 1336
35 USC 122 - Confidential status of applications; publication of patent applications	Book Page 1336
35 USC 123 Micro entity defined.	Book Page 1338
35 USC Chapter 12— Examination of Application (sections 131 to 135.	Book Page 1338
35 USC 131 Examination of application.	Book Page 1338
Due Process.	Book Page 1338
No third party right to interfere.	Book Page 1339
35 USC 132 Notice of rejection; reexamination	Book Page 1339
Examination, burden of proof for rejection.	Book Page 1339
Examination, prima facie case, burden shifting.	Book Page 1339
Examination, requirements for a <i>prima facie</i> case of unpatentability.	Book Page 1340
Examination, rejection of claims to new matter.	Book Page 1341
35 USC 133 Time for prosecuting application	Book Page 1341
Holding of abandonment, jurisdiction for judicial review.	Book Page 1341
Holding of abandonment, standard of review; record limitation.	Book Page 1342
Holding of abandonment, record on review, exceptions allowing supplementation	Book Page 1343
Holding of abandonment, record and standard when there is a constitutional challenge	Book Page 1343
Holding of abandonment, unavoidable delay standard.	Book Page 1344
Note: The unavoidable delay standard is relevant to PCT standard for restoration of priority	Book Page 1344
35 USC 134 Appeal to the Patent Trial and Appeal Board.	Book Page 1346
PTAB appeal, circumstances providing the applicant the right to appeal.	Book Page 1346
PTAB appeal, jurisdiction does not extend to petitionable matters.	Book Page 1347
PTAB appeal, de novo review of contested findings, and review of reasoning	Book Page 1347
PTAB appeal, burden of proof, a preponderance of the evidence must show nonpatentability.	Book Page 1348
PTAB appeal, appellant should identify what the examiner did wrong.	Book Page 1348
PTAB appeal, basis for decision on appeal.	Book Page 1348
PTAB appeal, affirmance cannot rely upon new facts or law.	Book Page 1348
PTAB appeal, substantive arguments required for asserting separate patentability	Book Page 1349
PTAB appeal, burden and standard of interpretation different than in federal court	Book Page 1350
PTAB appeal, standard of interpretation on an expired patent.	Book Page 1350
PTAB appeal, provisional non-statutory double patenting rejection, ripeness requirement	Book Page 1351
PTAB appeal, provisional non-statutory double patenting rejection, change in evidence	

.....	Book Page 1352
PTAB appeal, procedure for canceling some claims on appeal.	Book Page 1352
PTAB appeal, no issue preclusion resulting from a civil action to which the PTO was not a party.	Book Page 1352
PTAB appeal, requirement to provide notice and opportunity to respond to any new ground of rejection.	Book Page 1353
PTAB appeal, test for new ground of rejection.	Book Page 1353
Definition of “ground of rejection”.	Book Page 1358
37 CFR 41.41 - Reply brief.	Book Page 1360
PTAB appeal, reply brief may respond to a new argument in examiner answer	Book Page 1360
PTAB appeal, reply brief, belated new argument in a reply brief need not be considered	Book Page 1360
PTAB appeal, reply brief, may address new arguments raised in the examiner’s answer	Book Page 1360
PTAB appeal, reply brief, may respond to examiner’s answer clarifying vague basis for rejection.	Book Page 1361
35 USC 135 Derivation proceeding.	Book Page 1361
"substantive law of derivation of invention" under AIA.	Book Page 1363
35 USC 135(a)(2) - time for filing a derivation petition.	Book Page 1363
Substantial evidence.	Book Page 1364
35 USC 135 Interferences [Pre-AIA].	Book Page 1364
35 USC 135(a), (Pre-AIA), Interferences proceedings.	Book Page 1364
Interferences, standard of review.	Book Page 1364
Interferences, definition of interference-in-fact.	Book Page 1365
Interferences, definition of “involved” subject matter.	Book Page 1366
Interferences, designation of unpatentable claims.	Book Page 1367
Interferences, definition, “same patentable invention”.	Book Page 1367
Interferences, definition of interference-in-fact, genus and species test.	Book Page 1367
Interferences, definition of “no interference-in-fact”.	Book Page 1367
Interferences, Director has discretion whether to declare an interference proceeding	Book Page 1368
Interferences, the Board has discretion whether to terminate.	Book Page 1368
Interferences, Board subject matter jurisdiction.	Book Page 1369
Interferences, Board jurisdiction excludes patent-patent interferences.	Book Page 1369
Interferences, Board jurisdiction includes inventorship disputes.	Book Page 1369
Interferences, Board jurisdiction over benefit applications.	Book Page 1370
Interferences, Board jurisdiction to decide patentability.	Book Page 1370
Interferences, authority the Board to hold conference calls.	Book Page 1371
Interferences, authority of Board to terminate upon deciding priority.	Book Page 1372
Interferences, authority of the Board to impose a standing order.	Book Page 1372
Interferences, authority of the Board , decisions of the primary examiner not binding upon	

the Board.	Book Page 1372
Interferences, requirements for suggesting an interference, Bd. R. 202.	Book Page 1373
Interferences, suggesting an interference, burden of proof, summary judgement	Book Page 1373
Interferences, summary judgement, burden to show cause for supplementing showings	Book Page 1374
Interferences, counts, construction, broadest reasonable interpretation possible	Book Page 1375
Interferences, counts, construction of the preamble.	Book Page 1375
Interferences, counts, construction of the intended purpose of a count.	Book Page 1377
Interferences, counts, need not be patentable or enabled.	Book Page 1378
Interferences, counts, only a vehicle for contesting priority.	Book Page 1378
Interferences, counts, phantom Counts.	Book Page 1379
Interferences, counts, proper scope.	Book Page 1380
Interferences, counts, claim count correspondence.	Book Page 1381
Interferences, counts, constructive reduction to practice, entitlement to benefit	Book Page 1381
Interferences, priority.	Book Page 1382
Interferences, priority, conception.	Book Page 1382
Interferences, priority, reasonable diligence requires prior conception.	Book Page 1382
Interferences, actual reduction to practice requirements.	Book Page 1383
Interferences, interference estoppel, res judicata, and collateral estoppel.	Book Page 1383
37 CFR 41.127 - Judgment.	Book Page 1383
Interference estoppel applies to all issues which might have been presented in the interference	Book Page 1384
Types of interference estoppel.	Book Page 1384
Interference estoppel applies against an applicant, as to commonly disclosed subject matter	Book Page 1385
Interference estoppel does not apply against a patentee as to commonly disclosure subject matter of the patent.	Book Page 1385
Interference estoppel bars grounds not raised.	Book Page 1386
Interference estoppel bars grounds raised and decided.	Book Page 1386
Interference estoppel does not apply to motions that were requested but denied authorization	Book Page 1386
Interference estoppel applies to attacks against benefit.	Book Page 1387
Interferences, collateral estoppel on priority.	Book Page 1387
Interference, res judicata.	Book Page 1388
Interferences, interference estoppel in district court actions.	Book Page 1389
Interferences, interference estoppel applies to IPR, PGR, and CBM proceedings	Book Page 1390
Interferences, interference estoppel applies to district court validity issues.	Book Page 1391
Interferences, interference estoppel applies to parties, assignees, and privies	

.....	Book Page 1392
Interferences, issue preclusion based upon a 291 civil action..	Book Page 1392
Interferences, concession of priority is an admission of 102(g) prior art.	Book Page 1393
Interferences, issue preclusion does not apply in the PTO to a District Court upholding patent validity.	Book Page 1393
Interferences, 146 action determination of priority, burden of proof.	Book Page 1393
Interferences, motions practice.	Book Page 1395
37 CFR 41.121 Motions.	Book Page 1395
Interferences motions, unopposed motions.	Book Page 1396
Interferences motions, incorporation of arguments, improper.	Book Page 1396
Interferences motions, motions for discovery.	Book Page 1397
Interferences, motions to designate claims.	Book Page 1397
Interferences, motions to substitute counts.	Book Page 1398
Interference, motions for unpatentability over prior art.	Book Page 1398
Interferences, motions, unpatentability based upon anticipation.	Book Page 1399
Motion to substitute a count.	Book Page 1399
Interferences, motions, 135(b)(1) motion, "such a claim".	Book Page 1401
Motion to Designate claims.	Book Page 1401
Motion to substitute an application.	Book Page 1403
Motion for an additional interference.	Book Page 1403
Motion for additional counts.	Book Page 1403
Motion to add a reissue application.	Book Page 1403
Motion to correct inventorship.	Book Page 1404
Motions for additional discovery.	Book Page 1404
Motion for benefit.	Book Page 1405
Motion to add an opponent's application or patent.	Book Page 1405
<i>Pro Hac Vice</i> Motion - 37 CFR 41.5(a).	Book Page 1405
Interferences, replies.	Book Page 1406
Interferences, replies, new argument in reply, improper.	Book Page 1406
Interferences, evidentiary issues.	Book Page 1406
Interferences, evidentiary issues, requirements for corroboration.	Book Page 1407
Interferences, evidentiary issues, joint inventors of the invention defined by the count cannot corroborate.	Book Page 1407
Interferences, evidentiary issues, privilege	Book Page 1409
Interferences, evidentiary issues, electronic records.	Book Page 1409
Interferences, evidentiary issues, witness coaching during cross-examination prohibited	Book Page 1410
.....	
Interferences, evidentiary issues, sharing testimony of witnesses; witness coaching	Book Page 1410
.....	
Interferences, evidentiary issues, availability of evidence submitted by opposing party	Book Page 1411
.....	
Interferences, evidentiary issues, "failure to cross-examine" raises adverse no presumption	

.....	Book Page 1411
Interferences, evidentiary issues, Board authority to ignore hearsay.	Book Page 1412
Interferences, evidentiary issues, requirement for explanation of evidence. . .	Book Page 1412
Interferences, evidentiary issues, party admissions.....	Book Page 1413
Interferences, evidentiary issues, attorney argument.....	Book Page 1413
Interferences, evidentiary issues, insufficient verbal showings operating as an admission	
.....	Book Page 1414
Interferences, procedural issues.	Book Page 1414
Interferences, procedural issues, due process.	Book Page 1414
37 CFR 41.120 Notice of basis for relief.....	Book Page 1415
37 CFR 41.204(a) - Priority Statement.	Book Page 1416
Interferences, procedural issues, service and ex parte communications.....	Book Page 1416
Interferences, procedural issues, suppression of evidence.	Book Page 1416
Interferences, procedural issues, order of decision.	Book Page 1417
Interferences, procedural issues, right of a losing party to continue to participate	
.....	Book Page 1417
Interferences, procedural issues, Board required to determine fully developed priority issue	
.....	Book Page 1417
Interferences, procedural issues, award of priority to another as a result of inequitable conduct	
.....	Book Page 1418
Interferences, procedural issues, tolling based upon request for reconsideration	
.....	Book Page 1418
Interferences, procedural issues, incorrect inventorship in the preliminary statement	
.....	Book Page 1419
Interferences, procedural issues, stay.	Book Page 1419
Interferences, inconsistent theories.....	Book Page 1419
Interferences, burdens of proof.	Book Page 1420
Interferences, motions, burden of proof.	Book Page 1420
Interferences, burden of proof, no presumption of validity.....	Book Page 1420
Interferences, burden of proof, interference in fact.....	Book Page 1420
Interferences, burden of proof, patentability of proposed claim.....	Book Page 1423
Interferences, burden of proof, joint inventorship.....	Book Page 1424
Interferences, burden of proof, abandonment.	Book Page 1426
Interferences, burden of proof, summary judgement.	Book Page 1426
Interferences, burden of proof, summary judgement, suppression or concealment	
.....	Book Page 1426
Interferences, construction of interference rules.....	Book Page 1427
Rules construed to promote efficiency in determinations.	Book Page 1427
Interferences, antedating and a right to an interference.....	Book Page 1427
37 CFR 41.4 Timeliness.	Book Page 1427
37 CFR 41.4(a) Extension of time for good cause.....	Book Page 1427
"good cause" requirement for belated evidence.	Book Page 1427

37 CFR 41.4(b) "filing".....	Book Page 1428
37 CFR 41.4(b) excusable neglect for late filings.....	Book Page 1428
41.8 Mandatory Notices.....	Book Page 1430
PTAB discretion, motion to substitute a successor-in-interest.....	Book Page 1430
41.124 Oral Argument.....	Book Page 1430
37 CFR 41.128 Sanctions.....	Book Page 1430
"brief was used as a pretext to raise new arguments".....	Book Page 1431
Board Cross examination guidelines.....	Book Page 1431
37 CFR 41.154(b) - English language translations.....	Book Page 1434
35 USC 135(b).....	Book Page 1434
35 USC 135(b)(1).....	Book Page 1434
Test for same or substantially the same subject matter.....	Book Page 1434
Post critical date claims must find support.....	Book Page 1439
Request for interference has no legal significance.....	Book Page 1440
Post critical date claims same as pre critical date claims.....	Book Page 1441
Cannot be tolled; not a statue of limitations.....	Book Page 1441
Statute of repose.....	Book Page 1441
"Threshold issue" and repose.....	Book Page 1442
"such a claim" limited exception to the 1 year bar.....	Book Page 1443
Material limitation means "necessary to patentability".....	Book Page 1443
limitations in response to rejection are presumptively material.....	Book Page 1445
pre-critical date claims lacking written description compliance.....	Book Page 1446
Genus species not dispositive.....	Book Page 1446
Burden of proof.....	Book Page 1447
35 USC 135(b)(2) and 35 USC 120.....	Book Page 1447
"an application filed".....	Book Page 1447
"comply with the written description requirement".....	Book Page 1449
Claims amended after publication.....	Book Page 1449
Later filed claims no "material limitation" test.....	Book Page 1450
Substantive basis for ex parte rejection of claims.....	Book Page 1453
Statutory construction, "prior to one year from the date" includes the anniversary date	Book Page 1453
Applies on a count by count basis.....	Book Page 1454
Threshold issue.....	Book Page 1454
Applies to claims of any patent.....	Book Page 1455
Timely copied claim subsequently materially amended.....	Book Page 1456
Statute of repose.....	Book Page 1456
35 USC 135(c) - Interference Settlement Agreements.....	Book Page 1457
Access to interference settlement agreements.....	Book Page 1457
Filing of interference settlement agreement.....	Book Page 1457
35 USC 135(a) [Post-AIA].....	Book Page 1459
35 USC 135(e) [Post-AIA].....	Book Page 1460

35 USC Chapter 13— Review of Patent and Trademark Office Decisions (Sections 141 to 146).	Book Page 1461
35 USC 141 (Pre-AIA), Appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit	Book Page 1461
Note on 35 USC 141 jurisdiction for interferences.	Book Page 1461
35 USC 141 Appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.	Book Page 1461
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, standard of review.	Book Page 1462
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, jurisdiction, attached when appeal is filed	Book Page 1462
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, jurisdiction after request for adverse judgment	Book Page 1462
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, jurisdiction, requires finality.	Book Page 1463
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, jurisdiction, whether the ground on which the adverse decision is based is an undesignated new ground, is appealable.	Book Page 1464
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, requirements for specificity in PTAB decision	Book Page 1464
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, prudential rule against appeal by prevailing party	Book Page 1465
Federal Circuit, appeal from the PTAB, exception to the prudential rule against appeal by prevailing party.	Book Page 1465
Waiver, for failure to raise before the Board.	Book Page 1466
Exceptions to waiver.	Book Page 1467
Change in prevailing jurisprudence.	Book Page 1467
Application of correct law at issue before the court.	Book Page 1468
Remand to the Board to Decide Undecided Issues.	Book Page 1471
Cases to be decided on their own facts.	Book Page 1471
Standard for PTAB factual findings and legal conclusions.	Book Page 1471
PTAB factual findings must be based upon evidence.	Book Page 1473
PTO arguments on appeal limited to PTAB decision.	Book Page 1474
Court may affirm on any ground supported by the record.	Book Page 1474
Review on undisputed facts is a matter of law.	Book Page 1475
Standard of review whether factual finding errors are harmless.	Book Page 1475
Consideration of declaratory evidence in the USPTO.	Book Page 1475
Interference appeals that are not contested by the adverse party.	Book Page 1475
Collateral estoppel based upon prior claim construction.	Book Page 1476
35 USC 142 Notice of appeal.	Book Page 1476
"date of the decision" means date decision released to the parties.	Book Page 1477
35 USC 143 Proceedings on Appeal.	Book Page 1477
USPTO Director's right to intervene in an appeal from the PTAB.	Book Page 1477
35 USC 144 Decision on appeal.	Book Page 1478
Review is limited to the decision from which the appeal is taken.	Book Page 1478

35 USC 145 Civil action to obtain patent.	Book Page 1478
Patent 35 USC 145 plaintiffs are not responsible for the PTO's attorneys' fees	Book Page 1478
Trademark 15 USC 1071(b)(3) plaintiffs are responsible for the PTO's attorneys' fees	Book Page 1479
New evidence in 145 Actions.	Book Page 1479
Standing.	Book Page 1481
Time limit from date of "issue" of PTO decision.	Book Page 1482
35 USC 146 (Pre-AIA) Civil action in case of interference.	Book Page 1483
Termination of pre-AIA 146 review for interference proceedings.	Book Page 1483
35 USC 146 (Post-AIA) Civil action in case of derivation proceeding, Post-AIA	Book Page 1483
Standard of Review.	Book Page 1483
Standard of review, Board claim construction.	Book Page 1483
"admission of live testimony".	Book Page 1484
Jurisdiction.	Book Page 1486
Venue.	Book Page 1486
Adverse party status.	Book Page 1487
Appellant's right to elect the 35 USC 146 forum.	Book Page 1487
Scope of review in a 35 USC 146 action.	Book Page 1487
"insist[ing] that the issue be resolved"	Book Page 1487
"raise' the issue for judicial review".	Book Page 1489
Switching legal theories.	Book Page 1492
Evidence that was not before the Board.	Book Page 1494
Nature of 146 action.	Book Page 1494
Issue not raised at final hearing.	Book Page 1496
35 USC 146 Counterclaims.	Book Page 1497
35 USC Chapter 14— Issue of Patent (sections 151 to 157).	Book Page 1498
35 USC 154 Contents and term of patent; provisional rights.	Book Page 1498
35 USC 151 Issue of patent.	Book Page 1498
35 USC 152 Issue of patent to assignee.	Book Page 1498
35 USC 154 Contents and term of patent; provisional rights.	Book Page 1498
35 USC 154(a) In General.	Book Page 1498
Effect of priority claim on patent term	Book Page 1499
35 USC 154(b) Adjustment of Patent Term.	Book Page 1499
35 USC 154(b)(1) Patent term guarantees.	Book Page 1499
35 USC 154(b)(1)(A) Guarantee of prompt patent and trademark office responses	Book Page 1499
PTA "A" delay.	Book Page 1500
Express request pursuant to 35 USC 371(f).	Book Page 1500
Continued examination, time from allowance to issue.	Book Page 1500

35 USC 154(b)(1)(B) Guarantee of no more than 3-year application pendency.	Book Page 1501
35 USC 154(b)(1)(B)(i) - Continued examination	Book Page 1502
35 USC 154(b)(1)(C) Guarantee of adjustments for delays due to derivation proceedings, secrecy orders, and appeals.	Book Page 1502
35 USC 154(b)(2) Limitations.	Book Page 1502
35 USC 154(b)(2) Limitations (A) In general.	Book Page 1502
Overlapping “A” and “B” periods.	Book Page 1502
35 USC 154(b)(2)(B) Disclaimed term.	Book Page 1503
35 USC 154(b)(2)(C) - Reduction of period of adjustment.	Book Page 1503
35 USC 154(b)(2)(C)(1)(i) - Failure to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution	Book Page 1503
When there was no action that the applicant could take to conclude prosecution of the patent	Book Page 1503
37 CFR 1.704(c)(8).	Book Page 1505
Behavior having the potential to result in delay, such as belated IDS filing	Book Page 1505
35 USC 154(b)(2)(C)(1)(ii) - 3 months to respond.	Book Page 1506
35 USC 154(b)(2)(C)(1)(iii) - Regulations establishing circumstances.	Book Page 1506
35 USC 154(b)(3) Procedures for patent term adjustment determination.	Book Page 1507
35 USC 154(b)(4) Appeal of patent term adjustment determination.	Book Page 1507
35 USC 154(b)(4)(A) Civil action.	Book Page 1507
Exclusive forum and SOL of 154(b)(4)(A).	Book Page 1507
No "prerequisite to plaintiff's cause of action".	Book Page 1507
Tolling resulting from request for rehearing.	Book Page 1508
All PTA determinations are subject to the forum and timing limitations of 154(b)(4)(A)	Book Page 1509
35 USC 154(b)(4)(B) Challenge by a third party.	Book Page 1510
35 USC 154(d) Provisional rights	Book Page 1510
154(d)(2) “substantially identical inventions”.	Book Page 1510
Number of valid infringed claims has no bearing on damages.	Book Page 1511
35 USC 154(d)(1)(B) Actual notice.	Book Page 1511
35 USC 156 Extension of patent term.	Book Page 1512
35 USC 156(a) Product subject to regulatory review.	Book Page 1512
Judicial summary of Hatch-Waxman Act.	Book Page 1512
PTE applied to a patent subject to a terminal disclaimer.	Book Page 1518
“active ingredient”	Book Page 1518
Patent term extension does not apply on a claim-by-claim basis.	Book Page 1519
35 USC 156(b) - Limitations on rights extended.	Book Page 1519
35 USC 156(c) - Amount of time of extension of patent term.	Book Page 1520
35 USC 156(c)(4) “in no event shall more than one patent be extended”.	Book Page 1520
35 USC 156(e) - Determination of eligibility by the Director.	Book Page 1521
35 USC 156(f) - Definitions.	Book Page 1521

35 USC 156(g) - Definition of "regulatory review period"	Book Page 1521
35 USC 156(g)(3)(B).	Book Page 1521
Class III devices ineligible for patent term extension.	Book Page 1521
35 USC 156 and double patenting invalidity.	Book Page 1521
35 USC Chapter 15— Plant Patents (sections 161 to 164).	Book Page 1521
35 USC 161 Patents for plants.	Book Page 1521
Plant patent subject matter, definition.	Book Page 1521
Plant patent “inventors or discoverers” requirement.	Book Page 1523
35 USC 161 - Application of provisions for patents for inventions to plant patents	Book Page 1524
35 USC 162 Description, claim.	Book Page 1525
35 USC 163 Grant.	Book Page 1525
35 USC Chapter 16— Designs (sections 171 to 173).	Book Page 1525
35 USC 171 Patents for designs.	Book Page 1525
35 USC 171(a) - Design patent subject matter	Book Page 1525
Design patent subject matter limited to a design embodied in an article of manufacture	Book Page 1525
Design patent must be for an ornamental aspect of an article.	Book Page 1525
Design patent validity does not require the claimed article of manufacture be visible throughout its use.	Book Page 1526
Design patent validity does not require the design be aesthetically pleasing.	Book Page 1526
Design patent may disclose multiple embodiments, so long as scope of the invention is clear	Book Page 1527
Design patent may not be dictated by the function of the article (the "primarily functional" exclusion from design patent subject matter).	Book Page 1527
Design patent, primarily functional factors.	Book Page 1528
Primarily functional factor, existence and availability of alternative designs	Book Page 1528
Primarily functional factor, alternative designs that provide the same or similar functional capabilities.	Book Page 1528
Primarily functional factor, functionality of article of manufacture is not a factor	Book Page 1529
Primarily functional factor, whether the patented design had a functional purpose	Book Page 1530
35 USC 172 Right of priority.	Book Page 1531
35 USC 173 Term of design patent.	Book Page 1531
35 USC Chapter 17— Secrecy of Certain Inventions and Filing Applications in Foreign Country (sections 181 to 188).	Book Page 1531
35 USC 181 Secrecy of certain inventions and withholding of patent.	Book Page 1531
35 USC 182 Abandonment of invention for unauthorized disclosure.	Book Page 1532

35 USC 183 Right to compensation..	Book Page 1532
35 USC 184 Filing of application in foreign country	Book Page 1533
184(a), effect of a retroactive foreign filing license.	Book Page 1534
184(a), discovery pertaining to factual basis for petition for retroactive foreign filing license	Book Page 1534
184(c), scope of PTO issued foreign filing license.	Book Page 1535
35 USC 185 Patent barred for filing without license.	Book Page 1535
185, lack of a foreign filing license is a basis for the USPTO to rejection the US application	Book Page 1536
35 USC Chapter 18— Patent Rights in Inventions Made with Federal Assistance (sections 200 to 212).	Book Page 1536
35 USC 200 Policy and objective.	Book Page 1537
35 USC 201 Definitions.	Book Page 1537
35 USC 202 Disposition of Rights.	Book Page 1538
Part III—Patents and Protection of Patent Rights (Sections 251 to 329).	Book Page 1545
35 USC Chapter 25— Amendment and Correction of Patents (sections 251 to 257)	Book Page 1545
35 USC 251, (Pre-AIA), Reissue of defective patents.	Book Page 1545
35 USC 251, (Post AIA), Reissue of defective patents.	Book Page 1546
Question of law.	Book Page 1546
251(a) “ inoperative or invalid, by reason of a defective specification or drawing”	Book Page 1546
251(a) "through error, deemed wholly or partly inoperative or invalid".	Book Page 1546
Failure to present linking claim after restriction is correctable error.	Book Page 1550
Failure to file a divisional for restricted claims.	Book Page 1552
Attorney error.	Book Page 1552
251(a) “for invention disclosed in the original patent”.	Book Page 1552
Requirements of reissue over that of a continuation.	Book Page 1554
Intent to claim factor in determination of original patent test.	Book Page 1558
Intent to claim factor in determination of error	Book Page 1558
251(d) "unless applied for within two years".	Book Page 1558
251(d) “enlarging the scope of the claims of the original patent”.	Book Page 1559
perfecting priority is not broadening.	Book Page 1559
251(d) “claims of the original patent”.	Book Page 1560
Effect of reissue or reexamination certificate on laches	Book Page 1561
“presumption of validity does not apply”.	Book Page 1562
Violation of USPTO’s rules on reissue applications.	Book Page 1562
Broadening reissue.	Book Page 1562
Recapture rule.	Book Page 1563
Appellate review of recapture rule issues.	Book Page 1565

Application of recapture rule to facts.	Book Page 1566
Intentionally abandoned subject matter.	Book Page 1567
Amendments may give rise to the recapture rule.	Book Page 1568
Arguments may give rise to recapture rule.	Book Page 1568
material narrowing.	Book Page 1568
Reclaiming disclaimed subject matter.	Book Page 1569
The purpose for two year broadening limit on reissues.	Book Page 1569
No diligence requirement for narrowing reissue application.	Book Page 1569
Correction of inventorship via reissue.	Book Page 1570
37 CFR 1.71 et seq..	Book Page 1570
35 USC 252 Effect of reissue..	Book Page 1571
Doctrine of equitable intervening rights.	Book Page 1571
Standard of review.	Book Page 1571
Factors considered.	Book Page 1572
252, “protection of investments”	Book Page 1572
Intervening rights applies to a substantive change to a claim.	Book Page 1573
35 USC 253 Disclaimer.	Book Page 1574
Disclaimer's become effective when filed.	Book Page 1575
Not an admission of obviousness.	Book Page 1575
Terminal Disclaimer must be filed in the name of the patent owner.	Book Page 1576
35 USC 254 Certificate of correction of Patent and Trademark Office mistake.	Book Page 1577
35 USC 255 Certificate of Correction of Applicant's Mistake.	Book Page 1579
"actions for causes thereafter arising"	Book Page 1579
Standard of review of validity of corrected claims.	Book Page 1579
Effect of invalidated Certificate of Correction.	Book Page 1580
"clerical or typographical nature"	Book Page 1580
"minor character".	Book Page 1582
Limitation on a certificate broadening a claim.	Book Page 1583
Correction of indefinite claim term.	Book Page 1586
Certificate of Correction - Intervening rights.	Book Page 1587
Judicial Correction of a claim, by interpretation, of Patents.	Book Page 1587
35 USC 256 Correction of named inventor.	Book Page 1590
256, “error” requirement includes unintentional, considered, and deceptive acts	Book Page 1591
Inventorship defined.	Book Page 1591
Joint invention defined.	Book Page 1591
Design patent inventorship.	Book Page 1592
Method of making inventorship.	Book Page 1592
Inventorship determined on a claim-by-claim basis.	Book Page 1593
Invalidity resulting from incorrect inventorship.	Book Page 1594
Burden to show inventorship is incorrect.	Book Page 1594
Joint inventors are co-owners.	Book Page 1595

Declaratory judgement jurisdiction based upon inventorship dispute.	Book Page 1595
No requirement for diligence to correct inventorship.	Book Page 1596
Omitted co-inventor.	Book Page 1596
"256 expressly applies the standards of the entire section"	Book Page 1597
misjoinder error includes "all varieties of mistakes"	Book Page 1597
"standing to sue to correct inventorship".	Book Page 1598
Laches applied to an inventorship claim.	Book Page 1600
35 USC 257 Supplemental examinations to consider, reconsider, or correct information	Book Page 1601
35 USC Chapter 26— Ownership and Assignment (sections 261 to 262)	Book Page 1602
35 USC 261 Ownership; assignment.	Book Page 1602
Ownership - rights in an invention belong to the inventor.	Book Page 1603
Inventors can assign their rights to third parties.	Book Page 1603
Rights of employers in employee inventions.	Book Page 1603
"state law, not federal law, typically governs patent ownership".	Book Page 1604
Construction of patent assignments is generally governed by state law.	Book Page 1605
Federal law does not recognize retroactive assignments (nunc pro tunc) of patent rights	Book Page 1605
Federal law requires assignments of interests in patents to be in writing.	Book Page 1606
Assignment construction, terms, "inventions and discoveries"	Book Page 1606
Assignment construction, terms, identification of assigned properties.	Book Page 1607
Assignment construction, terms, "patent" versus "invention," applicability to continuations	Book Page 1607
Whether assignment of patent rights is an "automatic assignment," is a question of federal law	Book Page 1608
An "automatic assignment" is a valid expectant interest.	Book Page 1608
Assignment construction, "automatic assignment" clauses.	Book Page 1609
Assignment construction, clauses that do not effect "automatic assignment"	Book Page 1610
Automatic assignment precludes breach of contract for failing to subsequently assign	Book Page 1610
Automatic assignment, title vests not later than filing date of the patent application	Book Page 1611
Assignment construction, effect of preamble.	Book Page 1611
Hired-to-invent, limitation implied assignment, on contract between artificial legal entities not including the inventor.	Book Page 1612
Bone fide purchaser for value without notice rule.	Book Page 1613
A bone fide purchaser for value without notice cuts off equitable encumbrances	Book Page 1613
"without notice"	Book Page 1613
Imputation of notice to employer; constructive notice.	Book Page 1613

Bona fide purchaser of a license.	Book Page 1614
"recording ... assignment creates a presumption of validity"	Book Page 1614
transferring patent ownership by other than assignment.	Book Page 1615
"implied-in-fact contract to assign patent rights"	Book Page 1615
Passage of title via state law of property.	Book Page 1616
"final adjudication of ... property rights"	Book Page 1617
"assignment of legal title ... to the receiver or trustee"	Book Page 1618
Pleading an obligation to assign.	Book Page 1619
35 USC 262 Joint owners.	Book Page 1620
A joint owner may independently license.	Book Page 1620
Release and the right to sue.	Book Page 1621
A joint owner may independently sue for infringement.	Book Page 1621
A joint owner cannot grant a release for past infringement.	Book Page 1621
A joint owner may grant another joint owner the unilateral right to sue.	Book Page 1621
A joint owner's grant to another joint owner the unilateral right to sue does not surrender the right to grant a license.	Book Page 1622
Definitions, nonexclusive license, exclusive license.	Book Page 1622
Exclusive license, injury, standing to assert a claim.	Book Page 1623
Exclusive license to a defined territory, exclusive licensee has standing to sue	Book Page 1623
Exclusive license to subset of patented subject matter, exclusive licensee does not have standing to sue.	Book Page 1623
262 provides for contractual limitation of rights in patents.	Book Page 1624
Exclusive license, may confer right to exclusive licensee to sub-license.	Book Page 1624
Exclusive license, a requirements contract for a patented product is not a per se exclusive license.	Book Page 1624
35 USC Chapter 27— Government Interests in Patents (sections 266 to 267)	Book Page 1625
35 USC 267 Time for taking action in Government applications.	Book Page 1625
35 USC Chapter 28— Infringement of Patents (sections 271 to 273).	Book Page 1625
35 USC 271 Infringement of patents.	Book Page 1625
Infringement is a question of fact.	Book Page 1628
Infringement, burden of proof.	Book Page 1628
Scope of the patented invention.	Book Page 1628
Infringement, showing a claims covers a standard practiced by an accused device	Book Page 1628
Infringement, standard of review of court findings.	Book Page 1629
Infringement, subject matter jurisdiction not dependent upon location of acts of infringement	Book Page 1629
35 USC 271(a).	Book Page 1630
35 USC 271(a) Literal infringement.	Book Page 1631

35 USC 271(a) utility patent infringement.	Book Page 1631
Location of use infringement, for use of claimed system; location of control and benefit	Book Page 1631
Requirements for use infringement, for use of a claimed system, control and benefit from each claimed component.	Book Page 1631
Method claim infringement, attribution to a single entity.	Book Page 1632
Attribution to a single entity by direction or control.	Book Page 1632
Attribution to a single entity by formation of a joint enterprise.	Book Page 1633
Attribution to a single entity by agency or contract.	Book Page 1633
Attribution to a single entity by conditioning participation or a benefit.	Book Page 1634
Attribution, requirement to establish the manner or timing of performance.	Book Page 1634
“personally or through another acting under his direction or control”.	Book Page 1635
“acting as agents of or were contractually obligated”.	Book Page 1636
Front end single actor involving use of a back end for infringement.	Book Page 1637
Infringing use of a system claim requires controlling the system as a whole and obtaining a benefit.	Book Page 1639
Literal infringement under 35 USC 112, paragraph 6.	Book Page 1640
35 USC 271, Doctrine Of Equivalents (DOE) infringement, definition.	Book Page 1640
DOE requires a separate analysis from literal infringement.	Book Page 1640
DOE, <i>Graver Tank</i> , factor, knowledge of interchangeability of undisclosed alternative	Book Page 1641
DOE, <i>Hilton Davis</i> , whether purpose of amendment was related to patentability	Book Page 1641
DOE, <i>Hilton Davis</i> , concept of equivalence cannot eliminate completely any claimed elements (all elements rule).	Book Page 1641
DOE, <i>Hilton Davis</i> , DOE requires no proof of intent.	Book Page 1643
DOE, all elements rule, claim vitiation test.	Book Page 1643
DOE, foreseeability factor.	Book Page 1643
DOE, equivalency is evaluated at time of infringement.	Book Page 1644
DOE, prosecution history estoppel limitation.	Book Page 1644
Claim construction, presumption barring DOE, due to unexplained claim amendment	Book Page 1644
DOE, scope of limitation on claim scope, due to a prosecution history estoppel	Book Page 1645
DOE, amendment, burden of proof, the patentee bears the burden of proving an amendment does not surrender a particular equivalent.	Book Page 1646
DOE, patent burden to show DOE infringement of narrowed claims, that one could not reasonably have been expected to have drafted a claim that would have literally encompassed the alleged equivalent.	Book Page 1647
DOE, does not extend to subject matter actually surrendered during prosecution	Book Page 1647
DOE, doctrine of dedication of disclosed unclaimed subject matter.	Book Page 1647

DOE, limitations on the doctrine of dedication.	Book Page 1648
Disclosure-dedication rule, standard of review, question of law, de novo review	Book Page 1649
DOE Equivalents test, “insubstantial differences”.	Book Page 1649
DOE Equivalents test, Function, Way, Result.	Book Page 1650
DOE, evidence of designing around, inference that changes are substantial. . .	Book Page 1650
DOE, numerical ranges.	Book Page 1651
DOE, prosecution history estoppel, what a competitor reasonably may conclude the patentee surrendered to gain issuance of the patent.	Book Page 1653
DOE, prosecution history estoppel, asserted equivalent was yielded during the examination process in order to obtain the patent.	Book Page 1654
DOE, scope of an element added during prosecution unrelated to prior art. . .	Book Page 1654
DOE, definition of function in tripartite test.	Book Page 1654
DOE scope of equivalent may not read on the prior art.	Book Page 1655
DOE, hypothetical claim analysis, avoiding prior art.	Book Page 1655
DOE, burdens of proof for a hypothetical claim.	Book Page 1656
DOE, hypothetical claim, ensnarement	Book Page 1657
DOE, prosecution history estoppel, clarifying versus narrowing amendment	Book Page 1657
DOE, Prosecution history estoppel by cancelling claims or figures.	Book Page 1658
Design patent prosecution history estoppel.	Book Page 1659
Canceling design application figures narrows the claim.	Book Page 1659
Canceling design application figures is a surrender.	Book Page 1659
Admissions on non-equivalency.	Book Page 1661
DOE: Ensnarement.	Book Page 1661
DOE: no "forseeability exception" for MPF recitations.	Book Page 1662
DOE: applicability to function of MPF recitations.	Book Page 1663
"unless each of the steps is performed within this country".	Book Page 1663
35 USC 271(b) - Inducing infringement.	Book Page 1664
Inducing infringement, requires direct infringement.	Book Page 1664
Inducing infringement, elements.	Book Page 1664
Inducing infringement, element, direct infringement.	Book Page 1665
Inducing infringement, element, intent to induce.	Book Page 1665
Actual knowledge that the induced acts constitute patent infringement. . .	Book Page 1665
Inducing infringement, willful blindness to knowledge, sufficient.	Book Page 1666
Inducing infringement, willful blindness, elements.	Book Page 1666
Willful blindness requires active efforts by inducer to avoid knowing about infringement	Book Page 1666
Inducing infringement, deliberate indifference insufficient.	Book Page 1666
Inducing infringement, knew or should have known, sufficient.	Book Page 1666
Inducing infringement, belief in invalidity, not relevant to intent.	Book Page 1667
Inducing infringement, product instructions to induce, relevant to intent. .	Book Page 1667

Inducing infringement, labeling that would inevitably lead some physicians to infringe establishes the requisite intent for inducement.	Book Page 1667
Inducing infringement, intent based upon inducer's subjective knowledge of direct infringement.	Book Page 1668
Inducing infringement, extraterritorial acts showing inducing direct infringement within the United States satisfy inducement requirement.	Book Page 1669
Inducing infringement, ANDA labeling inducing particular use.	Book Page 1669
Inducing infringement, opinion of-counsel evidence may be relevant to intent to induce	Book Page 1670
Inducing infringement, personal liability for persons in authority and control of inducement	Book Page 1671
35 USC 271(c) - Contributory infringement.	Book Page 1671
Contributory infringement, requires direct infringement.	Book Page 1671
35 USC 271(d) - Exclusions from patent misuse when the patent owner lacks market power	Book Page 1672
Patent license issues.	Book Page 1672
Patent license, damages for breach of license.	Book Page 1672
Patent license, royalty "beyond the expiration date of the patent is unlawful per se"	Book Page 1673
Patent license, "recovery of damages".	Book Page 1674
35 USC 271(e) - Exclusions from infringement relating to regulatory approvals	Book Page 1674
35 USC 271(e)(1) - Safe harbor provision.	Book Page 1674
Safe harbor, extends to all uses reasonably related to developing information for submission under law regulating manufacture, use, or distribution of drugs.	Book Page 1674
Safe harbor, alternative uses are irrelevant to safe harbor protection.	Book Page 1675
Safe harbor, extends to data from experiments left out of the submission	Book Page 1675
Safe harbor, extends to the entire statutory scheme of regulation.	Book Page 1676
Safe harbor, extends to proceedings under the Tariff Act.	Book Page 1676
Safe harbor, extends to process patents in actions under Section 337.	Book Page 1676
Safe harbor, extends to submissions for medical devices.	Book Page 1677
Safe harbor, extends to submissions for class III medical devices.	Book Page 1677
Safe harbor, applies to "post-approval studies".	Book Page 1677
35 USC 271(e)(2) - ANDA infringement.	Book Page 1678
ANDA infringement, ANDA filed before patent issues.	Book Page 1680
ANDA infringement, predicate direct infringement for 271(b) inducement, is determination of ANDA infringement.	Book Page 1680
ANDA infringement, sample used for purposes of determining ANDA infringement need only be representative of what is likely to be approved and marketed.	Book Page 1681
ANDA infringement, no ANDA infringement for ANDA claiming a use not approved under the NDA.	Book Page 1681
ANDA infringement action defers FDA approval.	Book Page 1682

The first ANDA applicant is entitled to a commercial exclusivity period.	Book Page 1682
35 USC 271(e)(5) - Court powers to issue declarations in ANDA actions.	Book Page 1682
35 USC 271(f)(1) - Liability for incomplete infringement within the United States that induces to infringement outside the United States.	Book Page 1683
35 USC 271(f) - Generally.	Book Page 1683
271(f),	Book Page 1683
271(f) does not cover method claims.	Book Page 1684
35 USC 271(f)(1) - "substantial portion of the components of a patented invention"	
271(f)(1) - "Substantial portion".	Book Page 1684
35 USC 271(f)(1) - Single commodity component can never infringe.	Book Page 1685
35 USC 271(f)(1) - "as to actively induce the combination of such components outside of the United States".	Book Page 1685
35 USC 271(f)(1) - focuses on the location of the accused components, not the accused infringer	Book Page 1685
35 USC 271(f)(2) - Liability for supplying from the United States specially adapted components intended to infringe	Book Page 1686
35 USC 271(f)(2) - Extraterritoriality.	Book Page 1686
35 USC 271(g) - Liability for importing a product into the United States made by a process covered by a process patented.	Book Page 1687
35 USC 271(g) - Infringement does not require a single entity to perform all of the steps of a patented process.	Book Page 1688
35 USC 271(g), limitation on defense to infringement in ITC actions.	Book Page 1688
35 USC 271(a) Design patent infringement.	Book Page 1690
Design patent infringement, two part test.	Book Page 1690
Design patent infringement, the "ordinary observer" test.	Book Page 1690
Ordinary observer test, definition of the ordinary observer.	Book Page 1693
Ordinary observer test, design considered as a whole.	Book Page 1693
Ordinary observer test, consideration of prior art.	Book Page 1693
Ordinary observer test, difference from claimed design due to ornamental logo, its placement, and its appearance are factors underlying a finding	Book Page 1694
Ordinary observer test, field of purchase.	Book Page 1695
Ordinary observer test, prior art context in which the test is applied.	Book Page 1695
Ordinary observer test, relevance of prior art.	Book Page 1696
Ordinary observer test, differences evaluated based upon claimed design as a whole	Book Page 1696
Ordinary observer test, burden of production of comparison prior art is on the accused infringer.	Book Page 1696
Design patent infringement, claim construction does not require a detailed verbal description	Book Page 1697
Design patent infringement, determination cannot be based upon comparison to patentee's commercial embodiment.	Book Page 1697

Design patent infringement, "the 'point of novelty' test should no longer be used"
..... [Book Page 1697](#)

Design patent infringement limited to article identified in the design patent claim
..... [Book Page 1698](#)

35 USC 272 Temporary presence in the United States. [Book Page 1698](#)

35 USC 273 Defense to infringement based on prior commercial use. [Book Page 1699](#)

35 USC Chapter 29— Remedies for Infringement of Patent, and Other Actions (sections 281 to 299)...... [Book Page 1700](#)

35 USC 281 Remedy for infringement of patent. [Book Page 1701](#)

Statutory standing distinguished from constitutional standing. [Book Page 1701](#)

Whether a party has standing is a question of law. [Book Page 1701](#)

35 USC 281 - “A patentee shall have remedy”. [Book Page 1701](#)

Patentee, has standing to sue. [Book Page 1702](#)

Patentee, co-owners must be named parties. [Book Page 1702](#)

Patentee, includes successors in title. [Book Page 1702](#)

Patentee, exclusive licensee may be treated as "effective patentee", "effective owner," and have the right to sue. [Book Page 1703](#)

Patentee, failure of the patentee to join my require in dismissal. [Book Page 1705](#)

Patentee, right of subsequent patentee to damages prior to ownership requires express transfer of that right. [Book Page 1705](#)

Patentee, nonexclusive licensee lacks standing to sue. [Book Page 1708](#)

35 USC 282 Presumption of validity; defenses. [Book Page 1708](#)

35 USC 282(a) - Presumption of Validity. [Book Page 1709](#)

282(a), “A patent shall be presumed valid,” specifies a requirement of proof of invalidity by clear and convincing evidence. [Book Page 1709](#)

282(a), definition - “burden of proof” [Book Page 1710](#)

282(a), definition - “standard of proof” [Book Page 1711](#)

282(a), list of standards of proof. [Book Page 1711](#)

282(a), expresses a presumption of patent validity. [Book Page 1711](#)

282(a), imposes the clear and convincing standard of proof. [Book Page 1711](#)

282(a), a party challenging the validity of a patent must establish invalidity by clear and convincing evidence. [Book Page 1712](#)

Presumption of validity applies to each claim independently and each claim is presumed to have a different scope. [Book Page 1712](#)

Presumption of validity, does not apply in reexamination proceedings. [Book Page 1713](#)

Presumption of validity, PTO procedural compliance irrelevant after issuance
..... [Book Page 1713](#)

Presumption of validity in civil actions, evidence from pending administrative challenges
..... [Book Page 1713](#)

Presumption of validity, clear and convincing standard applies to evidence not before the PTO
..... [Book Page 1714](#)

Presumption of validity, strength of presumption depends upon whether PTO considered evidence.	Book Page 1714
Presumption of validity, presumption of validity strengthened by extensive administrative proceedings concerning the prior art.	Book Page 1716
Presumption of validity, effect of references cited in parent applications.	Book Page 1716
35 USC 282(b) - Defenses.	Book Page 1717
Definition “conditions for patentability”	Book Page 1717
Improper revival not a defense to an action involving the validity or infringement	Book Page 1717
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, absence of liability, lack of legal title.	Book Page 1718
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, absence of liability, patent exhaustion.	Book Page 1718
Patent exhaustion, rights exhausted by first sale, regardless of restrictions imposed on sale, and regardless of location of sale.	Book Page 1719
the	Book Page 1719
Patent exhaustion, designed to prevent double recovery.	Book Page 1720
Patent exhaustion, reserving specific claims of a patent from patent exhaustion would frustrate the purposes of the doctrine.	Book Page 1721
Patent exhaustion, applies to an authorized sale.	Book Page 1721
Patent exhaustion, sale by licensee to foundry of product produced by foundry under contract from licensee.	Book Page 1722
Patent exhaustion, applies to method patents.	Book Page 1722
Patent exhaustion, of method patent applies to downstream customers.	Book Page 1723
Patent exhaustion, does not apply to reproduction of patented item.	Book Page 1723
Patent exhaustion, applies to sale of product that embodies essential features of the patented device.	Book Page 1725
Patent exhaustion, applies if sale is authorized by the patentee.	Book Page 1725
Patent exhaustion, sale by entity to whom patentee gave an unconditional covenant not to sue exhausts patent right.	Book Page 1726
35 USC 282(b)(a), Defenses, absence of liability, experimental use.	Book Page 1726
Experimental use, burden of proof.	Book Page 1726
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, absence of liability, license.	Book Page 1727
License, field of use limitation.	Book Page 1728
License, governing clause construction.	Book Page 1730
License royalties, invalid patent.	Book Page 1730
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, absence of liability, implied license.	Book Page 1730
Implied license is a question of law.	Book Page 1730
Implied license in patent law, definition.	Book Page 1730
Implied license, test based upon sale of nonpatented equipment use to practice patented method.	Book Page 1731
Implied license, payment of compensation.	Book Page 1731
Implied license, equitable and legal estoppel.	Book Page 1731
Implied license to continuation patents.	Book Page 1732

Disclaimer of implied rights, effect on scope of license.	Book Page 1732
Implied license, extension to sales under judicial decree or self help. . . .	Book Page 1733
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, absence of liability, license to foreign patent. . . .	Book Page 1733
Restrictive license.	Book Page 1734
Patent license repudiation; patent challenge by the licensee.	Book Page 1734
Promise to pay royalties is not a promise not to seek a holding of invalidity	Book Page 1734
Patent licensee permitted to avoid the payment of royalties after repudiating a patent license.	Book Page 1734
Patent licensee liable for payment of royalties until repudiating the patent license	Book Page 1735
License based upon litigation settlement, distinct from <i>Lear</i> doctrine.	Book Page 1735
Licensed product estoppel.	Book Page 1736
License payments as evidence of infringement.	Book Page 1736
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, absence of liability, shop rights.	Book Page 1736
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, absence of liability, permissible repair or reconstruction	Book Page 1736
Concept of proportionality.	Book Page 1736
Permissible repair, replacement of spent part.	Book Page 1737
Permissible repair, replacement of a part that must be broken or removed to repair	Book Page 1737
Permissible repair, limited to patent right exhausted by sale in the United States	Book Page 1737
repair.	Book Page 1738
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability.	Book Page 1738
Equitable defenses - Standard of review.	Book Page 1738
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, equitable estoppel.	Book Page 1739
Equitable estoppel, standard of review.	Book Page 1739
Equitable estoppel defense to patent infringement, elements.	Book Page 1739
Equitable estoppel, pre and post issuance conduct.	Book Page 1742
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, laches.	Book Page 1742
Laches - Bars pre-suit damages.	Book Page 1742
Laches - Does not preclude an ongoing royalty.	Book Page 1743
Laches may counsel against an injunction.	Book Page 1743
Laches - Preponderance of the evidence standard.	Book Page 1743
Laches - Duration of delay.	Book Page 1744
Laches - Forms of prejudice.	Book Page 1744
Laches - Justifications for delay.	Book Page 1745
Laches - Egregious infringer conduct.	Book Page 1745
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, prosecution laches.	Book Page 1745
Prosecution laches, defense to infringement, required elements.	Book Page 1746
Prosecution laches element, material prejudice attributable to the delay. . . .	Book Page 1746

Laches.	Book Page 1746
Prosecution laches element, delay in obtaining the patent.	Book Page 1746
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, unclean hands.	Book Page 1748
Unclean hands, scope of judicial discretion.	Book Page 1748
Unclean hands.	Book Page 1748
Unclean hands.	Book Page 1749
Unclean hands, public interest in patents.	Book Page 1749
Unclean hands, legal firewall violation.	Book Page 1750
Unclean hands, witness false testimony attributable to a party.	Book Page 1751
Unclean hands, applies to all asserted patents tainted by misconduct.	Book Page 1751
Unclean hands, pattern of misconduct during prosecution, timing of repeated petitions asserting unintentional delay.	Book Page 1752
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, implied waiver.	Book Page 1752
Implied waiver, unjust advantage factor.	Book Page 1753
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, patent misuse.	Book Page 1753
Patent misuse, relation to antitrust law.	Book Page 1754
Patent misuse, condition on post-sale use.	Book Page 1754
Patent misuse, broadening the physical or temporal scope of the patent grant, with anticompetitive effect.	Book Page 1755
Patent misuse, anticompetitive effects, rule of reason analysis.	Book Page 1755
Patent misuse, license, unlawful restraint of trade.	Book Page 1755
Patent misuse, royalty agreement, extension beyond patent expiration date.	Book Page 1756
Patent misuse, selective technology licensing.	Book Page 1757
Patent misuse, patent pools, rule of reason analysis.	Book Page 1757
Patent misuse, violation of contract with standards setting organization.	Book Page 1757
Patent misuse, tying, anti versus pro competitive effect.	Book Page 1758
Patent misuse, restrictions on use in relation to right to exclude.	Book Page 1759
Patent misuse, remedies.	Book Page 1759
Patent misuse, defense, and not a cause of action.	Book Page 1759
35 USC 282(b), Defenses, (1), unenforceability.	Book Page 1759
Collateral estoppel, judgement of invalidity, no mutuality requirement.	Book Page 1759
Issue preclusion applies even though the precluding judgment comes into existence during appeal.	Book Page 1760
Collateral estoppel, issue preclusion, can arise from an agency determination	Book Page 1761
Collateral estoppel, effect of a Federal Circuit decision in a prior administrative proceeding	Book Page 1761
Collateral estoppel, effect of a Federal Circuit decision on distinct claims.	Book Page 1762
Collateral estoppel, effect of Federal Circuit affirmance invalidating the same claim	Book Page 1762
Related Trademark Law, issue preclusion, trademark likelihood of confusion.	Book Page 1763
Factors determining whether preclusion applies to TTAB determinations	

.....	Book Page 1764
Error does not prevent preclusion.	Book Page 1765
Issue preclusion, scope of estoppel limited by issues, not claims.....	Book Page 1765
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, assignor estoppel.	Book Page 1765
Assignor estoppel, intervening Federal Circuit decision affirming PTAB decision of unpatentability.	Book Page 1765
Assignor estoppel, generally.....	Book Page 1766
35 USC 282(b)(1), Defenses, unenforceability, fraud and inequitable conduct. .	Book Page 1769
Test for fraud, knowingly makes a false, material representation with the intent to deceive the PTO.	Book Page 1769
Inequitable conduct is an equitable defense.....	Book Page 1769
Inequitable conduct, equitable in nature.....	Book Page 1769
Inequitable conduct, standard of review, abuse of discretion.....	Book Page 1770
Inequitable conduct, element, specific intent to deceive the PTO and materiality of action	Book Page 1770
Inequitable conduct, specific intent to deceive the PTO.	Book Page 1770
Inequitable conduct, , mal intent must be the single most reasonable inference able to be drawn from the evidence.	Book Page 1771
Inequitable conduct, the court may infer intent from indirect and circumstantial evidence	Book Page 1772
Inequitable conduct, party alleging bears the burden of proof.....	Book Page 1772
Inequitable conduct, intent due to failure to identify related litigation. . . .	Book Page 1772
Inequitable conduct, intent based upon half truths, misrepresentations by omission	Book Page 1773
Inequitable conduct, intent, improper payment of small entity fees.....	Book Page 1774
Intent due to misrepresentations.	Book Page 1774
Inequitable conduct, intent, intent to deceive must be the single most reasonable inference	Book Page 1775
Inequitable conduct, materiality, but-for, applied to PTO patentability determination	Book Page 1775
Inequitable conduct, materiality, exceptions to “but for,” materiality for affirmative acts of egregious misconduct, per se materiality.....	Book Page 1776
Inequitable conduct, distinct from Rule 56.	Book Page 1778
Inequitable conduct, must be pled with particularity.	Book Page 1779
Reasonable inference, definition, one that is plausible and that flows logically from the facts alleged.	Book Page 1781
Inequitable conduct due to actions in related PTO proceeding.....	Book Page 1782
37 CFR 1.56 Duty of Candor.....	Book Page 1782
Duty of candor, to whom it applies.....	Book Page 1782
Duty of candor, scope of the duty.	Book Page 1783
Duty of candor, timing of correction of a known misrepresentation, delay. . .	Book Page 1783
Duty of candor, extends to a reexamination requestor participating in the proceeding	

.....	Book Page 1784
Duty of candor, what constitutes sufficient disclosure.	Book Page 1784
Duty of candor, no duty to respond to examiner's misunderstanding of prior art	Book Page 1784
Materiality, definition, “when there is a substantial likelihood that a reasonable examiner would have considered the information important in deciding whether to allow the application to issue as a patent”.....	Book Page 1785
Materiality, not limited to prior art.....	Book Page 1786
Materiality, PTO "reasonable examiner" standard.....	Book Page 1786
Materiality, effective filing date of each claim is highly material.	Book Page 1786
Materiality, extends to enablement.....	Book Page 1786
Materiality, relevance of related litigation to prosecution.	Book Page 1786
Materiality, probative value of PTO consideration of withheld evidence in a subsequent proceeding.	Book Page 1787
Intent, time of relevance of intent, during prosecution of the original application	Book Page 1787
Materiality, “reasonable examiner” standard.....	Book Page 1788
Materiality, reference anticipates.....	Book Page 1788
Contradictory representations in different forums.....	Book Page 1788
Litigation statements.	Book Page 1788
Materiality, timing of disclosure or material information.....	Book Page 1788
Intent, burying harmful prior art reference.....	Book Page 1789
Materiality, existence of copied claims is conclusively material.....	Book Page 1789
Materiality, statement in a petition requesting special treatment.....	Book Page 1789
Materiality, failing to update change in facts supporting a filed petition.	Book Page 1790
Materiality, submission of a false declaration or affidavit, “inherently material”	Book Page 1790
Materiality, false statements, narrowing claims to change inventorship does not moot prior false statements about inventorship.....	Book Page 1791
Materiality, references need not be resubmitted in continuing application	Book Page 1791
Examiners have a duty to examine.....	Book Page 1792
Foreign search report per se is not material.....	Book Page 1792
Effect of holding of inequitable conduct.	Book Page 1793
Patent unenforceable.	Book Page 1793
Inequitable conduct in a related applications and patents.	Book Page 1793
Duty of candor.....	Book Page 1797
Failure to disclose material information.	Book Page 1798
Intent.	Book Page 1798
Evidence indicating lack of intent.	Book Page 1800
Curing a misrepresentation.	Book Page 1800
35 USC 282(b), Defenses, waiver, failure to raise in response to an SJ motion. .	Book Page 1801

35 USC 282(b)(2), Defenses, invalidity, prior invention by another.....	Book Page 1801
Prior invention by another, burden of proof.	Book Page 1801
Prior invention by another, burden of proof, interfering patents..	Book Page 1802
35 USC 283 Injunction.	Book Page 1802
Permanent injunction.	Book Page 1802
Permanent injunction, standard of review, abuse of discretion..	Book Page 1802
Permanent injunction, four-factor test applies to disputes arising under the Patent Act	
.....	Book Page 1802
Permanent injunction, there is no presumption of irreparable harm in disputes arising under the Patent Act.....	Book Page 1803
Reduced scope of infringement, on appeal, militates for reconsideration whether permanent injunction is appropriate remedy.	Book Page 1804
Factor, irreparable harm.	Book Page 1804
Irreparable harm, to exclusive licensee.	Book Page 1805
Irreparable harm, causal-nexus requirement in multi-component products, a driver of demand.....	Book Page 1805
Irreparable harm, causal-nexus requirement in multi-component products, loss of insubstantial market share insufficient.....	Book Page 1806
Irreparable harm, licensing.....	Book Page 1806
Factor, remedies at law inadequate.....	Book Page 1807
Factor, balancing the hardships.....	Book Page 1807
Factor, the public interest.	Book Page 1807
Ongoing royalty for patent infringement in lieu of a permanent injunction. . .	Book Page 1808
Ongoing royalty, court can consider new evidence.	Book Page 1809
Ongoing royalty, court may weigh evidence differently.	Book Page 1809
Ongoing royalty, court may enhance damages for willfulness.....	Book Page 1810
Ongoing royalty, willfulness presumed.	Book Page 1810
Ongoing royalty, products covered..	Book Page 1811
Preliminary injunction, general Supreme Court criteria.....	Book Page 1811
Preliminary injunction, four-factor test.....	Book Page 1811
Preliminary injunction, standard of review, abuse of discretion.....	Book Page 1812
Preliminary injunction, specific factors.	Book Page 1812
Specific factor, "short time left to run on the patent".....	Book Page 1812
Specific factor, "prior adjudication of patent validity involving a different defendant"	
.....	Book Page 1813
Factor, likelihood of success on the merits.	Book Page 1813
Factor, likelihood of success, related interference.....	Book Page 1813
Factor, likelihood of success - impact of related PTAB decisions.....	Book Page 1814
Factor, irreparable harm.....	Book Page 1814
Irreparable harm, loss of good will.....	Book Page 1814
Irreparable harm, loss of market share and customers.....	Book Page 1815
Irreparable harm, loss of employees.....	Book Page 1815

Irreparable harm, direct competitors.	Book Page 1815
Irreparable harm, probative value of evidence pre-dating patent issuance	Book Page 1816
Factor, balance of equities and the public interest.	Book Page 1816
Factor, public interest.	Book Page 1816
Stay of preliminary injunction, pending appeal.	Book Page 1817
Stay of preliminary injunction, pending appeal, test, movant must show strong case on the merits, or substantial case on the merits and harm militates in its favor	Book Page 1817
35 USC 284 Damages.	Book Page 1818
284, damages, burden of proof is on the patentee, and is preponderance of the evidence	Book Page 1818
35 USC 284 "damages adequate to compensate for the infringement".	Book Page 1818
284 damages, congressional intent is to provide full compensation for infringement	Book Page 1818
284 damages, limited to activities that constitute patent infringement.	Book Page 1819
284 damages, ordinarily includes prejudgement interest to afford patent owners full compensation for infringement.	Book Page 1819
284 damages, apportionment, for an improvement, and not for an entirely new machine or contrivance.	Book Page 1820
284 damages, apportionment, for a new machine or contrivance, containing both convention and unconventional components, apportionment applies to the value of the unconventional components.	Book Page 1820
284 damages, apportionment, built-in apportionment based upon sufficiently comparable license.	Book Page 1821
284 damages, for an entirely new machine or contrivance, entire value rule and no apportionment.	Book Page 1821
284 damages, lost profits, burden of proof of lost sales is a "reasonable probability" but for the infringement.	Book Page 1822
284 damages, additional lost profits due to price erosion.	Book Page 1823
284 damages, <i>Panduit</i> factor (2) absence of acceptable non-infringing substitute must compare to patent owner's product, and not to infringer's other products.	Book Page 1824
284 damages, jury award covering future infringements precludes an ongoing royalty	Book Page 1824
284 damages, only for acts of infringement occurring after the patent issues	Book Page 1825
284 damages, liability limited to theory of infringement submitted to the jury	Book Page 1825
35 USC 284 "but in no event less than a reasonable royalty".	Book Page 1825
284, reasonable royalty, apportionment, required when the accused technology does not make up the whole of the accused product.	Book Page 1826
284, reasonable royalty, apportionment, must be based on the incremental value that the patented invention adds to the end product.	Book Page 1826

284, reasonable royalty, apportionment, must be based the smallest salable patent-practicing unit. [Book Page 1827](#)

284, reasonable royalty, entire market value rule applies for a multi-component product only when the feature patented constitutes the basis for customer demand. [Book Page 1827](#)

284, reasonable royalty, entire market value rule, a low royalty rate cannot substitute for proof that the patented feature drives demand for the entire product. [Book Page 1828](#)

284, reasonable royalty, entire market value rule, if the defendant asserts non infringing features of a multi-component product are valuable, the patentee must show that those features do not cause consumers to purchase the product. [Book Page 1828](#)

284, reasonable royalty, 25% rule of thumb rejected. [Book Page 1829](#)

Reasonable royalty, "for the use made of the invention". [Book Page 1829](#)

Reasonable Royalty, *Georgia Pacific* Factors. [Book Page 1830](#)

Reasonable royalty, non-commercialized prior art. [Book Page 1831](#)

Reasonable royalty, value of the benefit of use conferred to the infringer is probative [Book Page 1831](#)

Reasonable Royalty, evidence must relate to the claimed invention [Book Page 1832](#)

Reasonable Royalty, evidence must relate to the claimed invention and asserted damages theory [Book Page 1833](#)

Reasonable Royalty, settlement agreement evidence. [Book Page 1833](#)

Reasonable Royalty, anticipated incremental profits [Book Page 1834](#)

Reasonable Royalty, delay in filing suit. [Book Page 1834](#)

Royalty after verdict finding infringement, royalty rate determination. [Book Page 1834](#)

Royalty for ongoing infringement, the court must consider change in the parties' bargaining positions, and the resulting change in economic circumstances, resulting from the determination of liability. [Book Page 1834](#)

Royalty after verdict finding infringement, infringer's net profit margin limit is not a ceiling [Book Page 1836](#)

Royalty after verdict finding infringement, RAND (Reasonable And Non-Discriminatory) license terms. [Book Page 1836](#)

Royalty after verdict finding infringement, SEPs (Standards Essential Patents) [Book Page 1837](#)

35 USC 284 - Evidence and proof of damages. [Book Page 1837](#)

Jury verdicts and damage calculations not particular to infringement of any particular claim are upheld when any claim is found infringed and not invalid. [Book Page 1837](#)

35 USC 284 - Pre-judgment interest. [Book Page 1838](#)

Pre-judgment interest commences on the first date of infringement. [Book Page 1838](#)

Pre-judgment interest computed based upon the entirety of a lump-sum jury award [Book Page 1838](#)

Pre-judgment interest runs from the earliest date of any infringed patent, for a lump-sum award. [Book Page 1838](#)

Pre-judgment interest rate may be set by the district court based upon state statute [Book Page 1839](#)

35 USC 284 - "the court may increase the damages up to three times the amount found or assessed". [Book Page 1839](#)
 284, increased damages, burden of proof, preponderance of the evidence. . . . [Book Page 1839](#)
 284, increased damages, standard of review, abuse of discretion. [Book Page 1839](#)
 284, increased damages, warranted for conduct that is willful, wanton, malicious, bad-faith, deliberate, consciously wrongful, flagrant, or characteristic of a pirate. [Book Page 1840](#)
 284, increased damages, willful infringement is conduct sufficient for enhanced damages
 [Book Page 1840](#)
 284, increased damages, generally be reserved for egregious cases typified by willful misconduct. [Book Page 1840](#)
 284, increased damages, culpability is generally measured against the knowledge of the actor at the time of the challenged conduct. [Book Page 1840](#)
 284, increased damages, distinguished from 285 attorneys fees for litigation-related costs
 [Book Page 1841](#)
 284, increased damages, factor, objective reasonableness of the accused infringer's positions
 [Book Page 1841](#)
 284, increased damages, lack of waiver in view of intervening changes in law
 [Book Page 1841](#)
 Factor - Institution of a PTAB AIA Trial. [Book Page 1842](#)
 Factor - Patentee consideration of prior art. [Book Page 1843](#)
 Willfulness, factors. [Book Page 1843](#)
 Factor, conduct in related litigation. [Book Page 1843](#)
 Improper Factor - Enforcement, per se. [Book Page 1844](#)
 De novo standard of review on issue of constitutionality of punitive damage awards
 [Book Page 1845](#)
 No adverse may be drawn fro the failure to obtain an exculpatory opinion of counsel
 [Book Page 1845](#)
 Factor, state of mind of main person tasked with reviewing patent landscape
 [Book Page 1845](#)
 Factor, reliance on an opinion of counsel regarding noninfringement or invalidity
 [Book Page 1846](#)
 Factor, whether an opinion of counsel weighs probabilities. [Book Page 1847](#)
35 USC 285 Attorney Fees. [Book Page 1847](#)
 Standard of review, determination of "prevailing party". [Book Page 1847](#)
 Octane Fitness, "exceptional cases" definition. [Book Page 1847](#)
 Octane Fitness, "exceptional cases," overruling *Brooks Furniture* limitations
 [Book Page 1847](#)
 Octane Fitness, "exceptional cases," overruling *Brooks Furniture* clear and convincing burden of proof. [Book Page 1848](#)
 Exceptional case factors: strength of a party's litigating position and manner in which the case was litigated (*Octane Fitness*). [Book Page 1848](#)
 Abuse of discretion standard of review for 285 determinations (*Highmark*). . . [Book Page 1849](#)

CAFC applying the <i>Octane Fitness</i> test for exceptional cases.	Book Page 1850
CAFC applying <i>Highmark</i> abuse of discretion standard of review.	Book Page 1850
Abuse of discretion to deny attorneys fees, without explanation, after finding inequitable conduct.	Book Page 1851
285, exceptionality finding may be based upon a single act, but must be of entire case	Book Page 1851
285, exceptionality finding that rest on issues that had not been meaningfully considered by the district court, may require a fuller explanation of the court's assessment of a litigant's position.	Book Page 1851
285, exceptional case factors.	Book Page 1852
Exceptional case factor, ongoing substantive strength of the case.	Book Page 1852
Exceptional case factor, change in ongoing substantive strength of the case, due to a change in Supreme court law.	Book Page 1853
Exceptional case factor, ongoing substantive strength of the case, evidentiary effect of related PTO determinations and actions.	Book Page 1853
Exceptional case factor, spoliation of evidence.	Book Page 1855
Exceptional case factor, inequitable conduct based upon improper revival of an expired patent.	Book Page 1855
Exceptional case factor, inequitable conduct standard of proof, unresolved issue	Book Page 1855
Exceptional case factor, witness payment linked to the outcome of the case	Book Page 1856
Exceptional case factor, litigation misconduct.	Book Page 1856
Exceptional case factor, litigation misconduct, litigation positions not supported by party's witnesses.	Book Page 1857
Exceptional case factor, litigation misconduct, tardy filings.	Book Page 1857
Exceptional case factor, inadequate pre-filing investigation.	Book Page 1857
Exceptional case factor, bad faith nuisance suit.	Book Page 1859
Exceptional case factor, refusal to make or accept an offer of settlement, insufficient	Book Page 1859
Exceptional case factor, impact of legal uncertainty in section 101.	Book Page 1860
Exceptional case factor, filing of an action to set aside a prior judgment, without more, does not render a case exceptional per se.	Book Page 1860
Exceptional case factor, totality-of-the circumstances inquiry requires consideration of conduct of the prevailing party.	Book Page 1860
Exceptional case factor, whether conduct does or does not violates FRCP 11(b) is not the relevant benchmark.	Book Page 1861
Conduct of prevailing party, failure to provide clear notice of invalidity contention	Book Page 1861
Conduct of prevailing party, failure to timely notify opposing party that its conduct raised exceptional litigation behavior.	Book Page 1862
35 USC 285 - Definition of a "prevailing party".	Book Page 1862

Prevailing party, one that successfully rebuffs an “attempt to alter the parties' legal relationship”..... [Book Page 1862](#)

Prevailing party requires a judicial decision that effects or rebuffs a plaintiff’s attempt to effect a material alteration in the legal relationship between the parties..... [Book Page 1863](#)

A final judicial decision is a prerequisite for existence of a prevailing party
..... [Book Page 1863](#)

A continued stay is insufficient to establish a prevailing party. [Book Page 1864](#)

A defendant to be deemed a prevailing party without a favorable judgment on the merits
..... [Book Page 1864](#)

35 USC 285 - "reasonable attorney fees"..... [Book Page 1864](#)

Reasonable attorney fees, standard of review, abuse of discretion..... [Book Page 1865](#)

Reasonable attorney fees, appellate court has power to reduce. [Book Page 1865](#)

Reasonable attorney fees, purpose is compensatory, not punitive. [Book Page 1865](#)

Reasonable attorney fees, lodestar method..... [Book Page 1866](#)

Reasonable attorney fees, based upon compensation for fees in actual case, and not on a “results obtained” rationale. [Book Page 1867](#)

Reasonable attorney fees, require a causal connection between misconduct and fee awards
..... [Book Page 1867](#)

Reasonable attorney fees, 285 award is generally limited to patent issues. . . . [Book Page 1868](#)

285, reasonable attorneys fees, does not include fees for IPRs that the Appellants voluntarily undertook. [Book Page 1869](#)

285, factors for holding non-parties liable for attorneys fees. [Book Page 1870](#)

285, power of Federal Circuit to award attorney’s fees
..... [Book Page 1870](#)

Federal Circuit empowered to award 285 attorney’s fees for civil actions
..... [Book Page 1870](#)

Federal Circuit not empowered to award attorney’s 285 fees for IPR proceedings
..... [Book Page 1870](#)

285 limited to fees that were incurred during, in close relation to, or as a direct result of, judicial proceedings. [Book Page 1871](#)

35 USC 286 Time limitation on damages. [Book Page 1871](#)

Laches cannot preclude a claim for damages incurred within the six years prior to the filing of the complaint. [Book Page 1871](#)

35 USC 287 Limitation on damages and other remedies; marking and notice. . . [Book Page 1872](#)

287(a), notice provisions do not apply when only process or method claims are asserted
..... [Book Page 1875](#)

35 USC 287(a) - Patented article damages, limited to after the time of actual or constructive notice. [Book Page 1876](#)

Marking, policy is to provide notice to the public. [Book Page 1876](#)

Notice, the patentee has the "burden of pleading and proving at trial" [Book Page 1876](#)

Damages for a patented article commence from the time of notice, actual or constructive
..... [Book Page 1877](#)

35 USC 287(a) - Patented article, actual notice.	Book Page 1877
Actual notice, requires a communication from the patentee that provides sufficient specificity regarding its belief that the recipient may be an infringer.	Book Page 1877
Actual notice, requirements are not co-extensive with criteria for a DJ action	Book Page 1878
Actual notice, right to notify based upon good faith belief in possible infringement	Book Page 1878
Actual notice, propriety is governed by federal statute and precedent and is not a matter of state tort law.	Book Page 1879
Actual notice, right to give actual notice of patent rights and intent to enforce, to customers and potential customers of an accused infringer.	Book Page 1880
Actual notice, showing of bad faith required to support an injunction against notice	Book Page 1880
Actual notice, bad faith requires a showing that the claim is “objectively baseless”	Book Page 1881
Actual notice, objectively baseless means that no reasonable litigant could reasonably expect success on the merits.	Book Page 1881
Actual notice, willful infringement cannot substitute for actual notice.	Book Page 1881
35 USC 287(a) - Patented article, constructive notice, marking.	Book Page 1882
Marking, failure to mark after a patent’s issue date does not preclude damages after constructive notice by marking commences.	Book Page 1882
Marking, constructive notice occurs from the time when marking is substantially consistent and continuous.	Book Page 1882
Marking, cessation of sales of unmarked products does not excuse non-compliance with the notice requirement of 287.	Book Page 1883
Marking, the court may consider whether the patentee made reasonable efforts to ensure compliance by licensees with the marking requirements in determining whether there has been substantially consistent and continuous marking.	Book Page 1883
Marking, whether marking packaging meets the marking requirement.	Book Page 1884
Marking, burden of proof of compliance remains on patentee.	Book Page 1885
Marking, defendant has initial burden of production to show unmarked products exist	Book Page 1885
Marking, limitation on damages, applies when patent contains both apparatus and method claims and there is a tangible item to mark.	Book Page 1886
Marking, conflated damages award for infringement when both method patent and apparatus patent are infringed, damages available from issue date of method patent.	Book Page 1886
Marking, limitation on damages, limitation on damages, is not avoided by later disclaimer of asserted claim.	Book Page 1887
Marking, claim by claim or patent by patent application, issue remanded.	Book Page 1887
Marking, requires patentees to make reasonable efforts to ensure licensees comply with the marking requirements.	Book Page 1888
Marking, an extrajudicial admission.	Book Page 1888

Marking, extrajudicial admission by marking does not shift the burden of proof	Book Page 1889
Marking, marking estoppel doctrine rejected.	Book Page 1890
35 USC 288 Action for infringement of a patent containing an invalid claim. . .	Book Page 1890
35 USC 289 Additional remedy for infringement of design patent.	Book Page 1890
Two part test for determining a 289 damage award.	Book Page 1891
Design patent infringement damages are under 289 does not require a showing of willfulness or knowledge.	Book Page 1891
35 USC 289 - “article of manufacture to which such design or colorable imitation has been applied ”	Book Page 1891
35 USC 289 - "total profit".	Book Page 1892
Total profits are not limited to the profit attributable to the infringement. . . .	Book Page 1893
35 USC 289 - "shall not twice recover the profit made from the infringement". .	Book Page 1893
Patent damage awards, whether utility or design, are limited to one award for each infringing act, not one award for each infringed patent.	Book Page 1893
Design patent infringement damages are limited to the greater of either 284 or 289 award	Book Page 1894
35 USC 289 - “applies the patented design, or any colorable imitation thereof, to any article of manufacture for the purpose of sale”.	Book Page 1895
The “purpose of sale” refers to sale of the article having the patented design, and not to that article’s use in selling other products.	Book Page 1895
35 USC 290 Notice of patent suits.	Book Page 1895
35 USC 291 Derived patents.	Book Page 1895
Interference-in-fact test.	Book Page 1895
Jurisdiction under 291.	Book Page 1896
District court may stay 291 action based upon existence of a PTO interference proceeding	Book Page 1898
Federal Circuit jurisdiction to review district court stay in favor of a PTO proceeding that would preclude or moot further court review.	Book Page 1898
Interference estoppel based upon a prior PTO proceeding bars a 291 action on all issues that could have been raised in the PTO proceeding.	Book Page 1900
35 USC 292 False Marking.	Book Page 1900
Constitutionality of retroactive effect of the 2011 amendment.	Book Page 1900
Limitation on private right of action to those suffering competitive injury . . .	Book Page 1901
35 USC 292(a) - “Shall be fined not more than \$500 for every such offense. Only the United States may sue for the penalty authorized by this subsection.”.	Book Page 1901
292(a), false marking claim, FRCP 9(b) particularity of pleadings requirement applies	Book Page 1901
False marking damages requires a finding of the number of articles falsely marked	Book Page 1902
False marking requires article to be complete.	Book Page 1902
False marking, intent element.	Book Page 1902

False marking, provisional applications.	Book Page 1902
35 USC 293 Non-Resident Patentee; Service and Notice.	Book Page 1903
35 USC 295 Presumption: Product made by patented process.	Book Page 1903
35 USC 296 Liability of States, instrumentalities of States, and State officials for infringement of patents.	Book Page 1903
35 USC 298 - Advice of counsel.	Book Page 1904
35 USC Chapter 30— Prior Art Citations to Office and ex Parte Reexamination of Patents (sections 301 to 307).	Book Page 1904
35 USC 302 Request for reexamination.	Book Page 1905
35 USC 303 Determination of Issue by the Commissioner.	Book Page 1906
Prior district court validity decision.	Book Page 1906
Whether question of patentability is "new"	Book Page 1907
Question decided in an IPR is not a substantial "new" question.	Book Page 1907
"priority can be considered and determined".	Book Page 1909
Whether question is new determined from prosecution history.	Book Page 1909
showing that examiner actually considered issue.	Book Page 1909
"rejected this presumption of full consideration".	Book Page 1910
"inquiry occasioned by a request for reexamination".	Book Page 1911
35 USC 304 Reexamination order by the Director.	Book Page 1912
Burden of proof on patentability in a reexamination.	Book Page 1912
Obviousness type double patenting rejections in reexamination.	Book Page 1912
Doctrine of equivalents not relevant to broadening analysis.	Book Page 1913
reexamination during interference.	Book Page 1913
35 USC 305 Conduct of reexamination proceedings	Book Page 1914
Right to present new and amended claims.	Book Page 1914
"enlarging the scope of a claim of the patent"	Book Page 1914
Issue preclusion.	Book Page 1916
Admissibility of evidence relating to reexamination proceeding.	Book Page 1916
Civil Action by third party for action in a Reexamination.	Book Page 1916
Violation of 35 USC 305 not a basis for review.	Book Page 1917
35 USC 306 Appeal.	Book Page 1918
35 USC 307 Certificate of patentability, unpatentability, and claim cancellation	Book Page 1919
The patentee has no right in an amended or new claim until after issuance of the certificate	Book Page 1919
Effect of certificate canceling a claim upon which a district court had awarded a judgement	Book Page 1920
Effect of Reexamination.	Book Page 1921
Damages period.	Book Page 1921
Test for Identical Claims.	Book Page 1922
Standard of Review on Scope of Reexamined Claims.	Book Page 1923

35 USC 311 Request for inter partes reexamination [PRE-AIA]	Book Page 1924
35 USC 312 Determination of issue by Director [PRE-AIA].	Book Page 1924
35 USC 312(c) [PRE-AIA].	Book Page 1925
35 USC 314(b) Conduct of inter partes reexamination proceedings [PRE-AIA]	Book Page 1926
35 USC 314(b)(2) - [PRE AIA].	Book Page 1926
35 USC 315 Appeal in Inter partes reexamination [PRE-AIA].	Book Page 1927
Cross appeals in inter partes reexamination.	Book Page 1927
35 USC 315(c) Civil action estoppel [PRE-AIA].	Book Page 1928
Non-statutory collateral estoppel in inter partes reexamination.	Book Page 1928
35 USC 316 Certificate of patentability, unpatentability and claim cancellation [PRE-AIA]	Book Page 1929
35 USC 317 [PRE-AIA].	Book Page 1929
35 USC Chapter 31— Inter Partes Review (sections 311 to 319) [AIA].	Book Page 1932
Constitutional challenges to Inter Partes Review	Book Page 1932
Uncodified removal of Inter Partes Review dead zones.	Book Page 1933
35 USC 311 Inter partes review [AIA].	Book Page 1933
35 USC 311(a) - Who may file an IPR petition, and fee setting authority.	Book Page 1934
311(a), construction, "person" who may file an IPR petition.	Book Page 1934
Federal agency is not a "person" entitled to petition for IPR.	Book Page 1934
Federal reserve bank is a "person" are entitled to petition for IPR.	Book Page 1934
35 USC 311(b) - Scope of the petition.. . . .	Book Page 1935
311(b), the petitioner defines the scope of the proceeding.	Book Page 1935
Scope of PTAB review limited to grounds in the petition.	Book Page 1935
311(b), SAS remands, noninstituted grounds will be considered on remand.	Book Page 1936
311(b), IPR petitions are limited to grounds "that could be raised under section 102 or 103 and only on the basis of prior art consisting of patents or printed publications".	Book Page 1936
311(b), grounds, interference estoppel is not a ground that could be raised under section 102 or 103.	Book Page 1936
311(b), grounds, PTAB may consider non-prior art evidence, to show knowledge and motivations of a PHOSITA.	Book Page 1936
311(b), grounds, PTAB may not consider non-prior art evidence to show presence of an expectation of success.	Book Page 1937
311(b), grounds, 35 USC 102(d) loss of right is not a ground for IPR.	Book Page 1937
35 USC 311(c) - Filing deadline of 9 months after grant or termination of PGRs	Book Page 1938
35 USC 312, 315, 317, 322, 325, and 327 - Real party in interest (RPI).. . . .	Book Page 1938
Note: This section consolidates case law regarding the RPI recitations in statute sections in 35 USC 312; 315; 317; 322; 325; and 327.. . . .	Book Page 1938
RPI, failing to name all RPIs.	Book Page 1938
RPI, failing to name all RPIs, does not affect PTAB jurisdiction, PTAB may ignore RPI error	

.....	Book Page 1938
RPI, consequence, failing to name all RPIs, sanctions.	Book Page 1938
RPI, consequence, failing to name all RPIs, 315(b) bar date.	Book Page 1939
RPI, consequence, failing to name all RPIs excusable when there is no undue prejudice	Book Page 1939
312(a)(2), addition of RPI that would not have been time barred when petition filed, does require changing petition filing date and is not a bar to institution.	Book Page 1939
RPI, consequence, failing to name all RPIs, showing of good cause required to be entitled to correct petition to obtain a filing date.	Book Page 1940
RPI, consequence, failing to name all RPIs, termination of instituted proceeding and vacatur of institution decision..	Book Page 1940
RPI, petitioner bears the burden of persuasion.	Book Page 1941
RPI, identification in the petition of the RPI is not entitled to a presumption of correctness	Book Page 1941
RPI, quantum of evidence required to place RPI in issue.	Book Page 1941
Note: Despite <i>Thryv</i> , this work retains both Federal Circuit and PTAB decisions construing 315(b)..	Book Page 1943
RPI, 315(b), privity and RPI relationships arising prior to a decision to institute (CAFC)	Book Page 1943
RPI, 315(b), privity and RPI relationships arising prior to a petition filing date (PTAB)	Book Page 1944
RPI, definition, an entity that will benefit from having claims canceled, and that has a preexisting established relationship with the petitioner.	Book Page 1944
RPI, definition, an entity that desires review of the patent and at whose behest the petition is filed.	Book Page 1945
RPI, definition, Congress intended an expansive formulation.	Book Page 1946
RPI, element, an entity that will benefit from having claims canceled.	Book Page 1946
RPI, element, a preexisting established relationship with the petitioner.	Book Page 1947
RPI, factor, relationship, whether petitioner files IPRs to serve its clients' financial interests	Book Page 1947
RPI, factor, relationship, whether petitioner's client would benefit from petitioner's IPR selection factors.	Book Page 1948
RPI, factor, relationship, whether petitioner's client is having its interests represented by the petitioner.	Book Page 1948
RPI, factor, relationship, whether an entire industry would benefit.	Book Page 1949
RPI, factor, relationship, overlapping boards of directors.	Book Page 1949
RPI, factor, relationship, evidence indicating the petitioner's understanding that the non party desired to have the patent challenged.	Book Page 1949
RPI, factors, benefit and relationship, beneficial contract rights threatened by the existence of the challenged patent.	Book Page 1950
RPI, factors, control, funding, directing.	Book Page 1950
RPI, factors, corporate interrelationships, co-defendants, joint defense, common counsel,	

funding. [Book Page 1950](#)
 RPI, factors, DJ co-plaintiff, parent corporation exercising control over subsidiary
 [Book Page 1951](#)
 RPI, factors, common counsel in copending district court litigation, and joint venture or
indemnification agreement. [Book Page 1952](#)
 RPI, factors, FRCP 7.1 disclosures, parent companies owning more than ten percent interest
 [Book Page 1952](#)
 RPI, factor, averment to court by defendants that they would prepare and file petitions against
asserted patents. [Book Page 1953](#)
 RPI, factor, parent authorizing budgets and plans of subsidiary, common counsel of parent and
subsidiary, parent management team appearing in district court litigation. [Book Page 1953](#)
35 USC 312 Petitions [AIA]. [Book Page 1954](#)
35 USC 312(a) - Petition Requirements. [Book Page 1955](#)
312(a), construction, “A petition filed under section 311 may be considered only if”
 [Book Page 1955](#)
 312(a)(1) - The fee requirement. [Book Page 1955](#)
 312(a)(2) - Identifying all real parties in interest. [Book Page 1955](#)
 312(a)(3) - Particularity of the challenge: claims, grounds, evidence. [Book Page 1955](#)
 312(a)(3), the petition most identify the claims to which an argument relates
 [Book Page 1955](#)
 312(a)(3), the petition’s table of contents is identification of claims and corresponding
grounds. [Book Page 1955](#)
 312(a)(3), “patents and printed publications,” admissions in the specification do not qualify
 [Book Page 1956](#)
 312(a)(3), PTAB decision will rightfully be limited unpatentability theory raised in the
petition. [Book Page 1956](#)
 312(a)(3), PTAB must consider evidence in the petition of the understanding of a PHOSITA
 [Book Page 1957](#)
 Additional claims will not be added to a petition directly or indirectly, after filing
 [Book Page 1957](#)
35 USC 312(a)(5) “the petitioner provides copies of any of the documents required under
paragraphs (2), (3), and (4) to the patent owner or, if applicable, the designated representative of
the patent owner.”. [Book Page 1957](#)
35 USC 312(b) - Public Availability of the Petition. [Book Page 1958](#)
35 USC 313 Preliminary response to petition [AIA]. [Book Page 1958](#)
35 USC 314 Institution of inter partes review [AIA]. [Book Page 1958](#)
 314(a), assignor estoppel inapplicable in IPR proceedings. [Book Page 1958](#)
 314(a), contractual estoppel is inapplicable in IPRs. [Book Page 1959](#)
 314(a), tribal immunity (of Indian nations) is inapplicable in IPRs. [Book Page 1959](#)
 314(a), indispensable party law, FRCP 19(b), is inapplicable to IPR proceedings
 [Book Page 1960](#)
 314(a), the Director must institute review on all grounds and claims specified in an IPR

petition, or not institute. [Book Page 1961](#)
314(a), the "reasonable likelihood" threshold is lower than "more likely than not"
. [Book Page 1962](#)
314(a), the "reasonable likelihood" standard applies, on institution, to the issue whether a
reference is a printed publication. [Book Page 1963](#)
314(a), threshold for IPR institution is not affected by patent expiration. [Book Page 1963](#)
314(a), the Director has authority to delegate institution decisions to the PTAB
. [Book Page 1963](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, authority to deny institution even if the threshold is met
. [Book Page 1963](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, authority based upon 314(a) and 325(d). [Book Page 1964](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, for efficient use of the Board's time and resources
. [Book Page 1964](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, factors for follow-on petitions (*General Plastic*)
. [Book Page 1965](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, application of factors for follow-on petitions. [Book Page 1966](#)
Factor 1, diversity of patents, claims, and petitioners. [Book Page 1966](#)
Factor 1 expanded to petitioner having "significant relationship" to prior petitioner
. [Book Page 1967](#)
Factors 2 and 3, timing of petitioner's knowledge of prior art and patent and the PTAB's
positions in the first proceeding. [Book Page 1967](#)
Factor 3, timing of knowledge of the PTAB's decisions in earlier proceedings
. [Book Page 1967](#)
Factors 2 and 3, expanded to parties having a "significant relationship" to the prior
petitioner. [Book Page 1968](#)
Factors 4 and 5, delay and explanations for delay. [Book Page 1969](#)
Factors 4 and 5, expanded to parties having a "significant relationship" to the prior petitioner
. [Book Page 1969](#)
Factor 6, allocation of Board resources. [Book Page 1969](#)
Factor 7, statutory requirement for a final decision within 1 year. [Book Page 1970](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, based upon state of corresponding district court proceeding
(*NHK*). [Book Page 1970](#)
Factor 8, state of corresponding district court litigation (*NHK*). [Book Page 1970](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, competing trial dates, factors (*Fintiv*). [Book Page 1970](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, competing trial dates, holistic view. [Book Page 1971](#)
314(a), discretionary denial, *Fintiv* factor 6, scope of discovery not probative
. [Book Page 1971](#)
314(a), petitioner burden of proof, showing an effective filing date. [Book Page 1971](#)
35 USC 314(d) - Bar to reviewability of PTAB IPR institution decisions. [Book Page 1972](#)
35 USC 314(d) "nonappealable". [Book Page 1972](#)
314(d), "nonappealable" extends to district court actions. [Book Page 1972](#)
314(d), "nonappealable" extends to merits of the PTAB's decision. [Book Page 1973](#)

314(d) does not bar judicial review of the limits of the agency’s statutory authority	Book Page 1973
35 USC 314(d) "whether to institute".	Book Page 1974
314(d), "whether to institute" extends to decisions to institute and to not institute	Book Page 1974
314(d) bars judicial review of PTAB decisions to institute review.	Book Page 1974
314(d) bars judicial review of PTAB decisions to vacate institution decisions and terminate proceedings.	Book Page 1974
314(d) bars judicial review of PTAB decisions to terminate, after remand. . .	Book Page 1975
314(d) bars judicial review, via mandamus, of PTAB decisions to institute and to not institute review.	Book Page 1975
314(d) bars judicial review of the PTAB’s reconsideration of an institution decision	Book Page 1976
314(d) bars judicial review of the PTAB’s institution decision after a final decision	Book Page 1976
314(d) bars judicial review of PTAB decisions under all subsections of 314	Book Page 1977
314(d) bars judicial review of PTAB decisions relating to the 315(b) time bar	Book Page 1977
314(d) bars judicial review of PTAB decisions to institute relating to 312(d)(2)’s requirement for the petition to name all “real parties in interest”.	Book Page 1979
https://www.docketalarm.com/site_media/img/gear-blue.png - Inter partes review barred by civil action.	Book Page 1979
314(d), does not bar judicial review of 315(c) joinder decisions.	Book Page 1979
35 USC 315 Relation to other proceedings or actions [AIA].	Book Page 1979
35 USC 315, 317, and 327 - Privy of the petitioner..	Book Page 1980
Note: This section consolidates case defining the “privy of the petitioner” recitations in statute sections 35 USC 315, 317, and 327..	Book Page 1980
Privy depends upon relationship between parties.	Book Page 1980
Privy, 42.101(b), effect of privy relationship arising after a petition is filed	Book Page 1981
Privy, effect of privy relationship arising after service of a complaint alleging infringement	Book Page 1981
Types of relationships that can result in privy (<i>Taylor</i>).	Book Page 1982
Privy, definition, common law definition applies.	Book Page 1982
Privy, entity that had the opportunity to make such challenges in prior litigation	Book Page 1982
Privy inquiry focuses on relationship of petitioner to a named party during a prior lawsuit	Book Page 1983
Privy, factor, opportunity to control prior action.	Book Page 1984
Privy, factor, control, vender and reseller, mere payment of counsel fees and minor participation by the vendor in the trial are insufficient to establish privy.	Book Page 1987

Privity, factor, existence of privity when the petition was filed.	Book Page 1987
Privity, factor, control, of the lawsuit when petition was filed.	Book Page 1987
Privity, factor, relationship, at the time the complaint was served.	Book Page 1988
Privity, factor, partial control over prior action.	Book Page 1988
Privity, factors, relationship, and acting as a proxy.	Book Page 1989
Privity, factor, co-defendant in related litigation.	Book Page 1990
Privity, factor, successors-in-interest.	Book Page 1991
Privity, factor, indemnification.	Book Page 1991
Privity, non-factor, sale of infringing property to non party.	Book Page 1992
35 USC 315(a)(1) Inter partes review barred by civil action.	Book Page 1993
35 USC 315(a) “the petitioner or real party in interest”.	Book Page 1993
35 USC 315(a)(1) "filed a civil action challenging the validity of a claim of the patent"	Book Page 1993
315(a)(1), “filed a civil action” means filing a complaint with the court to commence the civil action.	Book Page 1993
315(a)(1) "civil action" does not include arbitration proceedings.	Book Page 1993
315(a)(1) "civil action" does not include Paragraph IV Certifications.	Book Page 1994
35 USC 315(a)(1) "before the date on which the petition for such a review is filed"	Book Page 1994
315(a)(1), “before the date” includes on the same day on which the petition is filed	Book Page 1994
315(a)(1), an action for a DJ asserting invalidity of a patent bars institution of an IPR subsequently filed by the DJ plaintiff or its RPIs.	Book Page 1995
315(a)(1), a defendant’s affirmative defense of invalidity and claim of non-infringement do not bar institution of an IPR subsequently filed by the defendant or its RPIs.	Book Page 1995
315(a)(1), voluntary dismissal without prejudice of an invalidity claim nullifies the bar to institution of an IPR.	Book Page 1996
35 USC 315(a)(2) - Stay of Civil Action.	Book Page 1996
315(a)(2), when patents in the civil action exceed those for which IPR petitions were filed	Book Page 1996
35 USC 315(a)(3) Treatment of counterclaim.	Book Page 1997
35 USC 315(b) - Patent Owner’s Action.	Book Page 1997
35 USC 315(b) “the petitioner, real party in interest, or privity of the petitioner”	Book Page 1997
Note: Despite <i>Thryv</i> , this work retains both Federal Circuit and PTAB decisions construing 315(b).	Book Page 1997
315(b), purpose is to avoid harassment.	Book Page 1997
315(b), burden of persuasion is on petitioner to demonstrate petition is not time barred	Book Page 1998
35 USC 315(b) - “is served”.	Book Page 1998
315(b), “is served” includes complaint served prior to enactment of the AIA	Book Page 1998

35 USC 315(b) "filed more than 1 year after ...served with a complaint".....	Book Page 1998
315(b), whether complaint dismissal without prejudice nullifies a 315(b) bar	
.....	Book Page 1998
35 USC 315(b) - "a complaint".	Book Page 2000
35 USC 315(b) - "complaint alleging infringement of the patent".	Book Page 2000
Counterclaims that allege infringement start the 1 year period.. . . .	Book Page 2000
1 year period unaffected by amended claims in the patent.	Book Page 2000
1 year period does not start when plaintiff lacked standing to when filing the complaint	
.....	Book Page 2001
35 USC 315(b) - "served with a complaint".	Book Page 2001
315(b), period begins when petitioner is officially a defendant in a law suit. .	Book Page 2001
35 USC 315(b) - "a complaint" is limited to actions under 35 USC 271 and 281	
.....	Book Page 2003
315(b), case consolidation under FRCP 42.. . . .	Book Page 2005
315(b), proving date of service; filing waiver or proof.. . . .	Book Page 2005
315(b), FRCP Rule 4.. . . .	Book Page 2006
315(b), service of motion for leave to file "a complaint".	Book Page 2006
315(b), late payment of petition fee.	Book Page 2007
35 USC 315(b) "The time limitation set forth in the preceding sentence shall not apply to a request for joinder under subsection (c).".	Book Page 2007
35 USC 315(c) - Joinder.	Book Page 2008
315(c), does not authorize either new issues or same party joinder (CAFC). .	Book Page 2008
315(c), does not authorize joinder of proceedings.	Book Page 2009
315(c), effect of 315(b) time bar, on joinder.. . . .	Book Page 2010
315(c), PTAB case law, currently overruled, new issues and same party joinder	
.....	Book Page 2011
315(c), PTAB case law, circumstances favoring joinder.	Book Page 2012
315(c), PTAB case law, currently overruled, new issue joinder.. . . .	Book Page 2012
315(c), joinder factors list.	Book Page 2013
Joinder factor "(1) set forth the reasons why joinder is appropriate".	Book Page 2013
"construed to secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive resolution.. . . .	Book Page 2013
Impact of both substantive issues and procedural matters	Book Page 2013
Burden and prejudice to the existing parties	Book Page 2013
Efficient resolution of related inter partes reviews.. . . .	Book Page 2014
Prior petition by the same petitioner, no corresponding complaint alleging infringement	
.....	Book Page 2014
Prior petition by the same petitioner, no corresponding complaint alleging infringement	
.....	Book Page 2015
315(c), 315(b) violation is a factor in a joinder decision.	Book Page 2015
315(c), delay in asserting new ground, lack of excuse.. . . .	Book Page 2015
Delay in asserting new arguments and evidence, addressing deficiencies identified in prior institution decision	Book Page 2016

Joinder Factor "(2) identify any new grounds of unpatentability".	Book Page 2016
Joinder Factor "(3)... impact ... joinder would have on the trial schedule"... . . .	Book Page 2018
Joinder Factor "(4) specifically address how briefing and discovery may be simplified"	Book Page 2018
Time delay between petitions, factor.	Book Page 2019
New evidence factor.	Book Page 2019
Additional factors in joinder decision.	Book Page 2020
Authorization for Joinder motions.	Book Page 2020
Opposition to motion for joinder.	Book Page 2021
Reply to motion for joinder.	Book Page 2021
35 USC 315(d) - Multiple Proceedings.	Book Page 2021
35 USC 315(d) - “providing for stay, transfer, consolidation, or termination”... . . .	Book Page 2022
315(d), consolidation, distinct from joinder.	Book Page 2022
315(d), consolidation of IPRs, factor, efficiency.	Book Page 2022
315(d), consolidation, factors, expanded grounds or claims.	Book Page 2022
315(d), stay of reexamination, factors, claims in reexamination are distinct from claim in IPR proceeding.	Book Page 2023
315(d), stay of reexamination, factors, grounds reexamination are distinct from grounds in IPR proceeding.	Book Page 2024
315(d), stay of a request for a certificate of correction (COC), factors.. . . .	Book Page 2024
315(d), stay of a request for a COC, factors, failure to obtain PTAB authorization to file a request for a COC, IPR is prior to decision on institution.	Book Page 2024
315(d), stay of a request for a COC, factor, whether the patentee or the PTO errors are sought to be corrected.	Book Page 2024
315(d), stay of a supplemental examination and reissue application.	Book Page 2025
315(d), stay of a reexamination in response to supplemental examination, factor, prejudice	Book Page 2025
315(d), lifting stay of a reexamination, factors, IPR final decision, appeal, limited patent term, different claims	Book Page 2026
315(d), stay of proceedings of family members of the involved patent.	Book Page 2026
315(d), stay of prosecution of related applications, factor, patentable indistinctness	Book Page 2026
315(d), stay of AIA proceeding, policy, rule 42.1, the rules "shall be construed to secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive resolution of every proceeding"	Book Page 2027
315(d), stay of AIA proceeding based upon appeal of district court’s judgment	Book Page 2029
315(d), requests for proceedings in related patents permitted.	Book Page 2030
35 USC 315(e) - Estoppel.	Book Page 2030
Note: Post <i>SAS</i> , no petition can be instituted with a denied ground.	Book Page 2030
35 USC 315(e) “The petitioner ... or the real party in interest or privy of the petitioner”	Book Page 2030
315(e) estoppel does not apply to any denied ground.	Book Page 2030

315(e) estoppel does not apply to a 315(c) joining party on any ground not present in the joined petition.	Book Page 2032
315(e) estoppel may apply to subcombinations of denied grounds.	Book Page 2032
315(e) Inter Partes Reexamination Estoppel does not apply to estop IPRs.	Book Page 2032
35 USC 315(e)(1) - Proceedings Before the Office.	Book Page 2033
315(e)(1) does not estop the PTAB from reaching a decision.	Book Page 2033
315(e)(1) “reasonably could have raised” factors.	Book Page 2034
315(e)(1) factor, awareness of grounds in related proceedings.	Book Page 2034
315(e)(1) factor, right to request joinder.	Book Page 2034
315(e)(1) factor, evidence of a skilled searcher conducting a diligent search	Book Page 2035
315(e)(1) factor, lack of awareness of reference.	Book Page 2036
315(e)(1) non-factor, argument foreseeability.	Book Page 2036
315(e)(1) factor, imputed knowledge from related proceedings.	Book Page 2036
315(e)(1) factor, claim not challenged in prior proceeding.	Book Page 2037
315(e)(1) factor, same prior art asserted in prior proceeding.	Book Page 2037
35 USC 315(e)(2) - Estoppel in Civil Actions and Other Proceedings.	Book Page 2037
315(e)(2) proponent of estoppel bears the burden of proof.	Book Page 2037
315(e)(2) “reasonably could have raised” factors.	Book Page 2038
315(e)(2) factor, standing to appeal an adverse IPR decision.	Book Page 2038
315(e)(2) factor, skilled searcher’s diligent search for prior art.	Book Page 2038
315(e)(2) factor, awareness of unasserted prior art combinations.	Book Page 2039
315(e)(2) factor, cumulative evidence.	Book Page 2040
315(e)(2) factor, non-cumulative evidence.	Book Page 2040
315(e)(2) factor, adversarial proceeding, settlement, participation.	Book Page 2040
35 USC 316 Conduct of inter partes review [AIA].	Book Page 2041
35 USC 316(a)(1) - Regulations, public availability, motions to seal - See 37 CFR 42.14, 42.54	Book Page 2042
35 USC 316(a)(2) - Regulations, standards for the showing of sufficient grounds to institute under 314(a) - See 37 CFR 42.108(c).	Book Page 2042
35 USC 316(a)(3) - Regulations, submission of supplemental information after the petition is filed - See 37 CFR 42.123.	Book Page 2042
35 USC 316(a)(4) - Regulations, governing inter partes review, relationship to other proceedings - See 37 CFR 42 subparts A and B.	Book Page 2042
316(a)(4), the Patent Office has the authority to regulate claim construction	Book Page 2042
PTAB may reject claim construction agreed upon by the parties.	Book Page 2042
35 USC 316(a)(5) - Regulations, discovery - See 37 CFR 42.51.	Book Page 2043
35 USC 316(a)(5)(B), standard, discovery of evidence otherwise necessary in the interest of justice.	Book Page 2043
316(a)(5)(B), interest of justice for additional discovery, factors.	Book Page 2043
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, not overly burdensome.	Book Page 2046

Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, declarations from other proceedings	Book Page 2046
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, specificity.	Book Page 2046
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, party "need only indicate its own claim construction".	Book Page 2047
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, repeated requests.	Book Page 2047
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, relevance, privity.	Book Page 2048
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement to discovery, relevance, secondary indicia	Book Page 2049
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, evidence that is otherwise unavailable	Book Page 2050
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, relevance, litigation admissions	Book Page 2051
Additional discovery, burden to show entitlement, relevance, of proffers.	Book Page 2052
Additional discover, burden to show entitlement, relevance, RPI.	Book Page 2052
35 USC 316(a)(6) - Regulations, sanctions for abuse - See 37 CFR 42.11, 42.12	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(a)(7) - Regulations, protective orders- See 37 CFR 42.54.	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(a)(8) - Regulations, patent owner response - See 37 CFR 42.120.	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(a)(9) - Regulations, canceling challenged claim, proposing substitute claims - See 37 CFR 42.121.	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(a)(10) - Regulations, right to an oral hearing See 37 CFR 42.70.	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(a)(11) - Regulations, final determination within 1 year.	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(a)(12) - Regulations, time period for requesting joinder under 315(c) - See 37 CFR 42.122.	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(a)(13) - Regulations, right of petitioner to file comments - See 37 CFR 42.108(c)	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(b) - Considerations in promulgating section 316 regulations.	Book Page 2053
35 USC 316(c) - PTAB shall conduct instituted IPR reviews.	Book Page 2053
35 US 316(d) - Patent owner's right to amend the patent.	Book Page 2053
PTAB limited power in an IPR proceeding to amend a patent to correct errors not subject to reasonable debate.	Book Page 2053
316(d), motion to amend, scope of PTAB review.	Book Page 2054
316(d), motion to amend, scope of PTAB review of proposed substitute claims includes 101 and 112.	Book Page 2054
35 USC 316(e) - Petitioner has the burden of proving a proposition of unpatentability by a preponderance of the evidence.	Book Page 2057
PTAB may rightfully find a claim unpatentable on the same evidence a district court finds the claim not invalid.	Book Page 2057
316(e), PTAB may rely upon the patent owner's own evidence to hold against the patent owner.	Book Page 2057
316(e), burden of production may shift during the proceeding.	Book Page 2058

316(e), burden of persuasion remains on the petitioner.	Book Page 2059
316(e), IPR institution decision does not shift burden of production.	Book Page 2059
316(e), IPR institution decision does not shift burden of persuasion.	Book Page 2060
316(e), improper burden shifting.	Book Page 2060
316(e), motion to amend the patent, burden of proof is on the petitioner to show the proposed amended claims are unpatentable.	Book Page 2061
316(e), motion to amend the patent, burden of proof on the PTAB to show the proposed amended claims are unpatentable when petitioner has abandoned the contest. . .	Book Page 2061
316(e), motion to amend the patent, PTAB guidance on motions to amend, after <i>Aqua Products</i>	Book Page 2062
316(e), motions to amend, PTAB guidance on burdens.	Book Page 2062
316(e), motions to amend, PTAB guidance on non prior art patentability	Book Page 2062
316(e), motions to amend, PTAB guidance on submission of evidence by petitioner	Book Page 2063
316(e), motions to amend, PTAB guidance on duty of candor.	Book Page 2063
35 USC 317 Settlement [AIA].	Book Page 2064
35 USC 317(a) - Termination of the proceeding upon filing a joint request.	Book Page 2064
317(a), factors precluding termination upon the filing of a joint request.	Book Page 2064
317(b), requirement to file a copy of the settlement agreement.	Book Page 2065
317(b), requirement to file any collateral agreements referred to in a settlement agreement	Book Page 2065
317(a), termination results in dismissal of a motion to amend the patent.	Book Page 2065
35 USC 318 Decision of the Board [AIA].	Book Page 2066
35 USC 318(a) - Final Written Decision.	Book Page 2066
318(a) “final written decision with respect to the patentability of any patent claim challenged”	Book Page 2066
318(a) thus refers to the limited grounds of unpatentability described in section 311(b)	Book Page 2066
318(a).	Book Page 2067
318(a), the PTAB must base its decision on arguments that were advanced by a party	Book Page 2068
318(a), PTAB may raise a new ground of unpatentability against a proposed substitute claim	Book Page 2068
35 USC 318(b) - Certificate.	Book Page 2069
318(b), effect of certificate canceling all claims of the patent, on corresponding reissue application.	Book Page 2069
35 USC 318(c) - Intervening Rights.	Book Page 2070
35 USC 318(d) - Publication of pendency data.	Book Page 2070
35 USC 319 Appeal [Post-AIA].	Book Page 2070
319, scope of review includes aspects of institution decision relied upon in final decision	Book Page 2070

319, joined party has a right of appeal.	Book Page 2071
319, zone of interests.. . . .	Book Page 2071
35 USC Chapter 32— Post-grant Review (sections 321 to 329)..	Book Page 2071
PGR availability.	Book Page 2072
35 USC 321 Post-grant review.	Book Page 2073
35 USC 321(a) - Who may file a PGR petition; and fee setting authority.. . . .	Book Page 2073
35 USC 321(b) - Scope of petition, any ground that could be raised under paragraph (2) or (3) of section 282(b)..	Book Page 2074
321(b), excludes nonstatutory obviousness type double patenting ground.. . . .	Book Page 2074
321(b), includes 35 USC 101 same invention type double patenting ground.. . . .	Book Page 2074
321(b), includes 35 USC 171 lack of ornamentality ground..	Book Page 2075
35 USC 321(c) - Filing deadline of 9 months from grant or issuance..	Book Page 2075
35 USC 322 Petitions..	Book Page 2075
35 USC 322(a) - Petition requirements.	Book Page 2075
35 USC 322(a)(2) - Identification of all real parties in interest..	Book Page 2075
35 USC 323 Preliminary response to petition.	Book Page 2075
35 USC 324 Institution of post-grant review..	Book Page 2076
35 USC 324(a) - The “more likely than not” threshold..	Book Page 2076
35 USC 324(a) - Basis for unpatentability, lack of ornamentality..	Book Page 2076
35 USC 324(e) - No appeal provision.	Book Page 2076
324(e), precludes review of institution decisions.	Book Page 2076
324(e), bars review whether a patent is a CBM patent.	Book Page 2077
324(e), does not bar review of final decisions.	Book Page 2078
324(e), bars review of institution decision when reviewing a final decision	Book Page 2078
324(e), reasoning applicable to 314(d) bar applies to 324(e) bar.	Book Page 2079
35 USC 325 Relation to other proceedings or actions..	Book Page 2079
35 USC 325(a) Infringer’s Civil Action.	Book Page 2080
35 USC 325(a)(1) "petitioner or real party in interest".	Book Page 2080
325(a)(1), Petitioner’s filing a civil action challenging the validity of a claim of the patent prior to file PGR petition bars institution on the PGR petition.	Book Page 2081
35 USC 325(a)(2) "petitioner or real party in interest".	Book Page 2082
35 USC 325(c) Joinder..	Book Page 2082
325(c) "more than 1 petition".	Book Page 2082
35 USC 325(d) Multiple Proceedings.	Book Page 2082
325(d) discretionary denial of petitions on the basis that they present the "same or substantially the same prior art or arguments" presented in a prior proceeding.	Book Page 2082
325(d), list of factors evaluated for discretionary denial (<i>Becton, Dickinson</i>)	Book Page 2082
325(d), factor (a), the similarities and material differences between the asserted art and the prior art involved during examination	Book Page 2083
325(d), factor (b), the cumulative nature of the asserted art and the prior art evaluated during	

examination [Book Page 2084](#)

 325(d), factor (c), the extent to which the asserted art was evaluated during examination, including whether the prior art was the basis for rejection. [Book Page 2084](#)

 325(d), factor (d), the extent of the overlap between the arguments made during examination and the manner in which Petitioner relies on the prior art or Patent Owner distinguishes the prior art. [Book Page 2084](#)

 325(d), factor (e), whether Petitioner has pointed out sufficiently how the Examiner erred in its evaluation of the asserted prior art [Book Page 2085](#)

 325(d), factor (f), the extent to which additional evidence and facts presented in the Petition warrant reconsideration of the prior art or arguments. [Book Page 2085](#)

 325(d), two-part framework, for applying factors (*Advanced Bionics*). [Book Page 2085](#)

 325(d), two-part framework, part 1, demonstrating the same or substantially the same art or arguments were previously were presented to the Office. [Book Page 2086](#)

 325(d), two-part framework, part 2, demonstrating material error by the Office
..... [Book Page 2086](#)

 325(d), exemplary determinations.. [Book Page 2086](#)

 325(d), determination of “substantially the same” prior art applied in a prior proceeding
..... [Book Page 2086](#)

 325(d), determination that applied references disclose substantially the same teachings relied upon in the petition, as prior art applied in a prior proceeding. [Book Page 2087](#)

 325(d), determination, overlapping prior art applied in a prior proceeding, and failure to certify that new art was unknown at time of filing prior petition. [Book Page 2089](#)

 325(d), determination, same prior art as prior petition, same combination, different reasoning
..... [Book Page 2089](#)

 325(d), determination, new prior art previously known when prior petition was filed
..... [Book Page 2090](#)

 325(d), determination, inconsistent petitioner contentions regarding claims entitlement to earlier filing date. [Book Page 2090](#)

 325(d), determination, using a prior PTAB decision to bolster challenges. . . [Book Page 2091](#)

 325(d), determination, impact of submission of the same reference in an ongoing related proceeding. [Book Page 2093](#)

 325(d), determination, correcting formal insufficiencies in a prior proceeding
..... [Book Page 2093](#)

 325(d), determination, demonstrating material error, when the same base reference was applied in a prior proceeding. [Book Page 2094](#)

 325(d), determination, additional miscellaneous decisions. [Book Page 2094](#)

35 USC 325(e) Estoppel. [Book Page 2096](#)

35 USC 325(e)(1) Proceedings Before the Office. [Book Page 2096](#)

 325(e)(1), “petitioner ... or the real party in interest or privy of the petitioner”
..... [Book Page 2096](#)

 325(e)(1), estoppel, reviewability. [Book Page 2096](#)

 325(e)(1), estoppel, applies "on a claim-by-claim basis". [Book Page 2097](#)

325(e)(1), estoppel, "any ground," makes no exceptions for intervening clarifying case law	Book Page 2098
325(e)(1), estoppel, "maintain a proceeding," includes presenting argument at the hearing with respect to the claims at issue	Book Page 2099
325(e)(1), estoppel, inapplicable to the PTAB.	Book Page 2099
325(e)(1), estoppel, applies to CBM proceedings.	Book Page 2099
325(e)(2), "petitioner ... or the real party in interest or privy of the petitioner"	Book Page 2100
35 USC 326 Conduct of post-grant review.	Book Page 2100
35 USC 326(a)(1) - Regulations, public availability, motions to seal - See 37 CFR 42.14, 42.54	Book Page 2101
35 USC 326(a)(2) - Regulations, showing of sufficient grounds to institute under 324(a), 324(b) - See 37 CFR 42.208(c).	Book Page 2101
35 USC 326(a)(4) - Regulations, governing post grant review, relationship to other proceedings - See 37 CFR 42 subparts A and C.	Book Page 2101
35 USC 326(a)(5) - Regulations, discovery - See 37 CFR 42.51; 42.224.	Book Page 2102
35 USC 326(a)(5), standard, discovery of evidence directly related to factual assertions advanced by either party in the proceeding.	Book Page 2102
326(a)(5), additional discovery, factors.	Book Page 2102
Additional discovery, burden of showing relevance, information considered by declarant	Book Page 2103
Additional discovery, burden of showing relevance, invalidity evidence produced in related litigation.	Book Page 2104
35 USC 326(a)(6) - Regulations, sanctions for abuse - See 37 CFR 42.11, 42.12	Book Page 2104
35 USC 326(a)(7) - Regulations, protective orders- See 37 CFR 42.54.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(a)(8) - Regulations, patent owner response - See 37 CFR 42.120.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(a)(9) - Regulations, canceling challenged claim, proposing substitute claims - See 37 CFR 42.221.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(a)(10) - Regulations, right to an oral hearing - See 37 CFR 42.70.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(a)(11) - Regulations, final determination within 1 year.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(a)(12) - Regulations, right of petitioner to file comments - See 37 CFR 42.208(c)	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(b) - Considerations in promulgating section 326 regulations.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(c) - PTAB shall conduct instituted PGR reviews.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(d) - Patent owner's right to amend the patent.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 326(e) - Petitioner has the burden of proving a proposition of unpatentability by a preponderance of the evidence.	Book Page 2105
35 USC 327 Settlement.	Book Page 2105
327(a), "petitioner, or to the real party in interest or privy of the petitioner".	Book Page 2105
35 USC 328 Decision of the Board.	Book Page 2106
35 USC 328(a) - Final Written Decision.	Book Page 2106

35 USC 329 Appeal. [Book Page 2107](#)

37 CFR PART 42—Trial Practice Before the Patent Trial and Appeal Board

. [Book Page 2107](#)

Subpart A—Trial Practice and Procedure (42.1 to 42.80). [Book Page 2107](#)

General. [Book Page 2107](#)

37 CFR 42.1 Policy. [Book Page 2107](#)

 42.1(c) Decorum. [Book Page 2108](#)

37 CFR 42.2 Definitions. [Book Page 2108](#)

 "involved". [Book Page 2108](#)

37 CFR 42.3 Jurisdiction. [Book Page 2108](#)

 Party must notify the Board of proceedings relating to the involved patent. . . [Book Page 2109](#)

37 CFR 42.4 Notice of trial. [Book Page 2109](#)

37 CFR 42.5 Conduct of the proceeding. [Book Page 2109](#)

 42.5(a), motion for a separate claim construction proceeding. [Book Page 2110](#)

 42.5(a), motion to enlarge response size. [Book Page 2110](#)

 42.5(a), motion to limit claims and grounds in petition. [Book Page 2110](#)

 42.5(a), motion for contested extension of time. [Book Page 2110](#)

 42.5(a), motion to expedite the proceeding. [Book Page 2111](#)

 42.5(a), motion to exclude demonstrative exhibit. [Book Page 2111](#)

 42.5(a), unauthorized argument not considered. [Book Page 2112](#)

 Motions for page enlargements. [Book Page 2112](#)

 42.5(a), enforcing orders of other tribunals. [Book Page 2112](#)

 42.5(a), motion for extension of time to find counsel. [Book Page 2113](#)

 42.5(a), motion to rely upon evidence obtained from another proceeding. . . . [Book Page 2113](#)

37 CFR 42.5(c)(3) Late action. [Book Page 2113](#)

 42.5(c)(3), good cause requirement. [Book Page 2113](#)

 42.5(c)(3), factor, contacting the PTAB upon missing a deadline to obtain authorization for filing. [Book Page 2114](#)

 42.5(c)(3), factor, duration of delay in submitting a corrected document. [Book Page 2114](#)

 42.5(c)(3), factor, promptness of remedial action. [Book Page 2114](#)

37 CFR 42.5(d) Ex parte communications. [Book Page 2115](#)

 Proper method for initiating communication with the PTAB. [Book Page 2115](#)

37 CFR 42.6 Filing of documents, including exhibits; service. [Book Page 2115](#)

37 CFR 42.6(a) General format requirements. [Book Page 2117](#)

 42.6(a). improper formatting to avoid size limits, sanction. [Book Page 2117](#)

 42.6(a)(2)(iii), line spacing. [Book Page 2117](#)

 42.6(a)(2)(iii), line spacing, claim charts, correction, by sentence deletion. . . [Book Page 2118](#)

37 CFR 42.6(a)(3) Incorporation by reference; combined documents. [Book Page 2118](#)

 42.6(a)(3), test for incorporation by reference. [Book Page 2118](#)

42.6(a)(3) , footnotes citing another document amount to incorporation. . . .	Book Page 2118
42.6(a)(3), claim charts citing to other claim charts amount to incorporation	Book Page 2119
42.6(a)(3), citing to a declaration to support a conclusory statement a petition amounts to incorporation.	Book Page 2119
42.6(a)(3), citing to a declaration to support a conclusory argument in a petition amounts to incorporation.	Book Page 2119
42.6(a)(3), treatment of identified factual portions, identified argumentative portions, and unidentified factual portions of a declaration.	Book Page 2119
42.6(a)(3), “other combined documents,” declaration referencing other declarations amount to incorporation.	Book Page 2120
42.6(a)(3), referring to claim elements by numbers identified in another document amounts to incorporation.	Book Page 2120
42.6(a)(3), incorporation effectively enlarging petition beyond the page limit, sanction	Book Page 2121
37 CFR 42.6(b) Modes of filing. (1) Electronic filing.	Book Page 2121
Electronic filing errors.	Book Page 2121
37 CFR 42.7 Management of the record.	Book Page 2121
42.7(a), expungement of unauthorized papers.	Book Page 2122
37 CFR 42.8 Mandatory notices.	Book Page 2122
42.8(a)(3), belated notification of change in real party-in-interest.	Book Page 2123
42.8(a)(3), belated identification of related proceedings.	Book Page 2123
37 CFR 42.8(b)(1) Real party-in-interest.	Book Page 2123
42.8(b)(1), RPI identification, look beyond chain of title.	Book Page 2123
42.8(b)(1), RPI identification, exclusive licensee identification.	Book Page 2124
37 CFR 42.8(b)(2) Related matters.	Book Page 2124
42.8(b)(2), related matters, does not affect completion of petition.	Book Page 2124
37 CFR 42.9 Action by patent owner.	Book Page 2125
37 CFR 42.10 Counsel.	Book Page 2125
37 CFR 42.10 (c) <i>pro hac vice</i>	Book Page 2125
42.10(c), <i>pro hac vice</i> motion, requirements.	Book Page 2125
42.10(c), <i>pro hac vice</i> motion, facts sufficient to show good cause to grant.	Book Page 2126
.....	Book Page 2127
42.10(c), <i>pro hac vice</i> motion, declaration must be an exhibit.	Book Page 2128
42.10(e), withdrawal.	Book Page 2128
37 CFR 42.11 Duty of candor; signing papers; representations to the Board; sanctions	Book Page 2128
42.11(a), duty of candor, fact specific inquiry.	Book Page 2129
42.11(a), duty of candor, notification of the PTAB of newly-discovered prior art	Book Page 2129
42.11(a), misrepresentation of credentials, effect on weight accorded testimony	Book Page 2130

42.11(a), misleading translation, effect on weight accorded testimony.	Book Page 2130
37 CFR 42.12 Sanctions.	Book Page 2131
Sanction factor, pattern of misconduct.	Book Page 2131
37 CFR 42.13 Citation of authority.	Book Page 2132
37 CFR 42.14 Public availability.	Book Page 2132
42.15 Fees.	Book Page 2132
Petition and Motion Practice.	Book Page 2132
37 CFR 42.20 Generally.	Book Page 2132
37 CFR 42.20 (c) Burden of proof.	Book Page 2132
Burden of persuasion, showing inherent disclosure.	Book Page 2132
Burden of persuasion, identifying differences from prior art.	Book Page 2133
Burden of persuasion, explanation of claim construction.	Book Page 2133
Burden of persuasion, credibility of declarant factual assertions requires supporting facts and objective evidence.	Book Page 2133
Burden of persuasion, must be met in the petition and not on rehearing.	Book Page 2134
Burden of proof, evidence submitted with reply cannot cure deficiency in a petition	Book Page 2134
Burden of persuasion, motion to correct citation provides support for an argument already made	Book Page 2135
37 CFR 42.21 Notice of basis for relief.	Book Page 2135
42.21(a), notice, proposed motions list, contents.	Book Page 2135
37 CFR 42.22 Content of petitions and motions.	Book Page 2136
37 CFR 42.23 Oppositions and replies.	Book Page 2136
37 CFR 42.23(b) - Replies.	Book Page 2136
42.23(b), reply, opportunity to refute arguments and evidence advanced by the opposing party	Book Page 2137
42.23(b), reply, Petitioner gets the last word.	Book Page 2137
42.23(b), reply, new theory of invalidity, improper.	Book Page 2138
42.23(b), reply, new issues in reply, remedy.	Book Page 2138
42.23(b), reply, proper response to new evidence in a reply supporting petition argument	Book Page 2138
42.23(b), reply, new experimental evidence in reply, to correct errors in experimental evidence in petition.	Book Page 2139
42.23(b), reply, new experimental evidence in reply to support inherency argument advanced in the petition.	Book Page 2140
.	Book Page 2141
42.23(b), reply, new argument in reply supporting petition.	Book Page 2141
42.23(b), reply, new evidence in reply relating to factual disputes that reasonably should have been anticipated.	Book Page 2143
42.23(b), reply, may contain new evidence in reply relating to latent defects in prior art teaching relied upon in POR.	Book Page 2143
42.23(b), reply, may contain new evidence contesting assertion in a POR asserting benefit to	

an earlier application.	Book Page 2144
42.23(b), reply, may contain new argument and evidence contesting assertion in a POR, even if the new argument or evidence also supports the petition, so long as the petition makes the prima facie case.	Book Page 2144
37 CFR 42.24 Type-volume or page-limits for petitions, motions, oppositions, and replies	Book Page 2144
42.24, size limits do not include length of cited expert declaration.	Book Page 2145
42.24, size limit violations should be raised promptly.	Book Page 2145
42.24, supporting declaration may cite to evidence not cited in the petition.	Book Page 2146
42.24, size limit includes length of statements of material fact and claim charts	Book Page 2146
Motions to enlarge petition page limits.	Book Page 2147
37 CFR 42.25 Default filing times.	Book Page 2149
Testimony and Production.	Book Page 2149
37 CFR 42.51 Discovery.	Book Page 2149
37 CFR 42.51(b)(1) - Routine Discovery.	Book Page 2150
Routing discovery, underlying data and lab notebooks references in petition and declarations	Book Page 2150
37 CFR 42.51(b)(1)(i) -Exhibit must be served with citing paper.	Book Page 2150
" exhibit cited in a paper or in testimony must be served".	Book Page 2151
37 CFR 42.51(b)(1)(ii) Cross examination of affidavit testimony.	Book Page 2151
Failure to make witness available for cross examination.	Book Page 2151
Cross examination of a translator.	Book Page 2152
37 CFR 42.51(b)(1)(iii) - Inconsistent information.	Book Page 2152
"privileged information excepted".	Book Page 2152
"inconsistent information" refers to documents and things, not testimony.	Book Page 2152
37 CFR 42.51(b)(2) Additional discovery.	Book Page 2152
42.51(b)(2), right to move for additional discovery.	Book Page 2153
37 CFR 42.51(c) Production of documents.	Book Page 2153
37 CFR 42.52 Compelling testimony and production.	Book Page 2153
Production of original reviewed and signed declaration, and cross-examination thereon, when version served and filed differs original.	Book Page 2153
37 CFR 42.53 Taking testimony.	Book Page 2154
37 CFR 42.53(a) Uncompelled direct testimony.	Book Page 2154
37 CFR 42.53(c) Duration of cross examination.	Book Page 2154
Compensating time for deponent wasting cross-examination time.	Book Page 2154
Contracting time limits.	Book Page 2155
37 CFR 42.53(d)(2) - Cross-examination.	Book Page 2155
Cross-examination, delay until close of evidence, forbidden.	Book Page 2155
Cross-examination, on petition declaration during reply period, forbidden.	Book Page 2155
Cross-examination, instructing witness not to answer is generally improper.	Book Page 2155
Cross-examination, questions clearly outside the scope of direct testimony, forbidden	

.....	Book Page 2156
Cross-examination, questions about redacted material not improper, per se. .	Book Page 2156
Cross-examination, counsel cannot confer with their witness until cross-examination concludes.	Book Page 2156
Cross-examination, counsel can confer with their witness after cross and prior to redirect	Book Page 2157
Cross-examination, remedies for witness coaching between cross and re-direct	Book Page 2157
Cross-examination, an exhibit is relevant for inquiry.....	Book Page 2158
Cross-examination, entitlement to agreed upon duration.	Book Page 2158
Cross-examination, no limitations on who can attend or observe.	Book Page 2158
Cross examination with an interpreter.	Book Page 2159
Cross examination, extraterritorial depositions.	Book Page 2163
Redirect examination, scope.	Book Page 2165
37 CFR 42.53(d)(2) cross examination of declarant on a supplemental evidence declaration	Book Page 2165
37 CFR 42.53(d)(5)(ii) - Scope of cross-examination.....	Book Page 2166
Cross examination, not limited to documents identified in the direct testimony	Book Page 2166
Cross examination, conducting a single deposition and providing a single transcript in related proceedings.	Book Page 2166
37 CFR 42.53(f) Manner of taking deposition testimony.	Book Page 2166
37 CFR 42.53(f)(5), witness read and sign requirement.	Book Page 2166
37 CFR 42.53(f)(7) - Transcript copies and filing.....	Book Page 2167
Transcript, proponent provides copies and files exhibit.	Book Page 2167
Transcript, errata sheets not authorized.....	Book Page 2167
Transcript, party must obtain PTAB authorization to file an errata sheet. . . .	Book Page 2168
Transcript, errata sheet cannot be used as a substitute for redirect	Book Page 2168
Transcript, errata sheet may be authorized if it merely correct typographical and minor grammatical errors.	Book Page 2169
37 CFR 42.53(g) Costs.	Book Page 2169
Costs, proponent of the direct testimony bears costs of court reporter.....	Book Page 2169
Costs, proponent of the direct testimony does not normally bear costs of opposing party's fees and expenses.	Book Page 2170
Costs, for deposition testimony of alleged RPI non-party.	Book Page 2170
37 CFR 42.54 Protective order.	Book Page 2171
42.54, effect of filing a motion to seal.	Book Page 2171
42.54, standard for granting a motion to seal.	Book Page 2171
42.54, motion to seal, required showings.	Book Page 2172
42.54, motion to seal, required showings when the protective order differs from the default protective order.	Book Page 2173
42.54, Joint motions must still make showings.	Book Page 2173

42.54, protective order terms.	Book Page 2173
42.54, protective order terms, access requiring agreement of the parties.. .	Book Page 2173
42.54, protective order terms, attorneys eyes only.	Book Page 2173
42.54, parties, as defined by a protective order.	Book Page 2174
42.54, protective order, terms must relate to the proceeding before the PTAB	Book Page 2175
42.54, clarification of default protective order.	Book Page 2175
42.54, each motion to seal must show good cause for sealing.	Book Page 2176
37 CFR 42.55 Confidential information in a petition.	Book Page 2176
37 CFR 42.56 Expungement of confidential information.	Book Page 2177
Expungement, burden of proof, good cause.	Book Page 2177
37 CFR 42.61 Admissibility.	Book Page 2177
Admissibility, burden of proof is on opponent, not proponent.	Book Page 2177
Admissibility, untimely evidence may be excluded.	Book Page 2178
Admissibility, reliance upon PTAB "administrative expertise".	Book Page 2179
Admissibility, rebuttal evidence not subject to exclusion.	Book Page 2179
Admissibility, contrasted with "weight to be assigned testimony".	Book Page 2180
37 CFR 42.62 Applicability of the Federal Rules of Evidence.	Book Page 2181
FRE 403, inapplicable due to Board competency.	Book Page 2181
Failure to present a declarant for cross-examination results in exclusion of declarant's testimony.	Book Page 2181
Declaration from another proceeding submitted in subject proceeding for truth of the matter asserted therein given little or no weight unless declarant sits for cross examination in subject proceeding.	Book Page 2181
37 CFR 42.63 Form of evidence.	Book Page 2182
Video recording deposition and submission of video recording.	Book Page 2182
37 CFR 42.63(b) Translation required	Book Page 2182
37 CFR 42.63(c) - Exhibit numbering.	Book Page 2183
37 CFR 42.64 Objection; motion to exclude.	Book Page 2183
37 CFR 42.64(a), objection, deposition evidence.	Book Page 2183
37 CFR 42.64(b), objection, other than deposition evidence.	Book Page 2184
Objection, to redactions.	Book Page 2184
37 CFR 42.64(b)(2) Supplemental evidence.	Book Page 2184
Belated submission of supplemental evidence with motion to exclude.	Book Page 2185
37 CFR 42.64(c) Motion to exclude.	Book Page 2185
Motion to exclude pleadings improper.	Book Page 2186
Motion to exclude Petitioner Reply declaration.	Book Page 2187
Motion to exclude Patent Owner motion-to-amend declaration.	Book Page 2188
Motions to exclude, declarations containing material appropriate for a response	Book Page 2188
Motion to exclude due to improper deposition testimony.	Book Page 2189
Motions to exclude, based upon improper witness coaching.	Book Page 2189

Motions to exclude, leading questions on direct examination.	Book Page 2189
Motions to exclude, contextual cues, leading questions on re-direct.	Book Page 2189
Motion to exclude, other testimony from another proceeding.	Book Page 2190
Motion to exclude, exhibits in support of belated arguments.	Book Page 2190
Motion to exclude, must comply with authorized timing and procedure. . . .	Book Page 2190
Motion to exclude, declaration in response to deposition testimony improper	Book Page 2191
37 CFR 42.65 Expert testimony; tests and data.	Book Page 2191
Expert testimony, on patent law not permitted.	Book Page 2192
Expert testimony, failure to provide expert witness for cross-examination. . .	Book Page 2192
Expert testimony, scope of cross examination.	Book Page 2192
Expert testimony, weight accorded testimony.	Book Page 2194
Expert testimony, failure of expert to address critical limitation.	Book Page 2195
Expert testimony, motion to disqualify an expert witness.	Book Page 2195
Oral Argument, Decision, and Settlement.	Book Page 2196
37 CFR 42.70 Oral argument.	Book Page 2196
Oral hearing, lead counsel must be present.	Book Page 2196
Oral hearing, change in date, counsel conflict insufficient.	Book Page 2197
Oral hearing, motion to seal hearing.	Book Page 2197
Key factual assertion first made at oral argument.	Book Page 2197
Oral hearing, new direct testimony forbidden.	Book Page 2198
Oral hearing, cross-examination and redirect testimony may be allowed. . . .	Book Page 2198
Oral hearing, factors affecting whether to allow inventor testimony at oral hearing	Book Page 2198
37 CFR 42.70 (b) Demonstrative exhibits.	Book Page 2199
Demonstrative exhibits, appropriate content.	Book Page 2199
Demonstrative exhibits, unauthorized filing.	Book Page 2201
37 CFR 42.71 Decision on petitions or motions.	Book Page 2201
37 CFR 42.71(c) Petition decisions.	Book Page 2202
Non-institution in response to motion to not institute trial.	Book Page 2202
37 CFR 42.71(d) Rehearing.	Book Page 2202
Rehearing not required for appeal.	Book Page 2202
Standard of review on rehearing.	Book Page 2202
Response to request for rehearing not authorized.	Book Page 2203
37 CFR 42.72 Termination of trial.	Book Page 2203
37 CFR 42.73 Judgment.	Book Page 2203
37 CFR 42.73(b) Request for adverse judgement.	Book Page 2204
The PTAB may enter adverse judgement in response to the patent owner canceling all claims at issue.	Book Page 2204
37 CFR 42.73(d) Estoppel.	Book Page 2205
Different claims and grounds.	Book Page 2205
37 CFR 42.74 Settlement.	Book Page 2206

Motion to terminate.....	Book Page 2206
Motion to terminate as to less than all Petitioners.	Book Page 2207
37 CFR 42.80 Certificate.....	Book Page 2208
Subpart B—Inter Partes Review (42.100 to 42.123)	Book Page 2208
General.....	Book Page 2208
37 CFR 42.100 Procedure; pendency.....	Book Page 2208
PTAB initial construction may be limited to terms not admittedly met by the prior art	Book Page 2208
37 CFR 42.101 Who may petition for inter partes review.....	Book Page 2209
37 CFR 42.102 Time for filing.	Book Page 2209
37 CFR 42.103 Inter partes review fee.	Book Page 2209
37 CFR 42.104 Content of petition.	Book Page 2209
37 CFR 42.104(b) Identification of challenge.....	Book Page 2210
37 CFR 42.104(b)(3) How the challenged claim is to be construed.	Book Page 2210
42.104(b)(3), for MPF and SPF recitations, petition “must identify the specific portions of the specification that describe the structure, material, or acts corresponding to each claimed function”.	Book Page 2211
37 CFR 42.104(b)(4) How the construed claim is unpatentable.	Book Page 2212
42.104(b)(4) petition must show “How the construed claim is unpatentable under the statutory grounds identified in paragraph (b)(2)”.	Book Page 2212
42.104(b)(4), rule may be waived if petition provides sufficient notice of the challenge to each identified claim.	Book Page 2212
37 CFR 42.104(b)(5) - Citation to exhibits and explanation of their relevance. .	Book Page 2213
42.104(b)(5), petition failing to expressly cite to the prior art.	Book Page 2213
42.104(b)(5), petition failing to expressly discuss prior art in connection with a challenged claim.....	Book Page 2213
42.104(b)(5), petition failing to identify figures therein in a claim chart, as prior art	Book Page 2214
42.104(b)(5), petition reliance upon evidence not made of record.....	Book Page 2214
37 CFR 42.104(c) - Correction of clerical or typographical errors in a petition. .	Book Page 2214
42.104(c), petition correction, given liberal interpretation due to remedial nature	Book Page 2214
42.104(c), petition correction, “clerical error” applies to acts of those not charged with exercising discretion in carrying out an instruction.....	Book Page 2215
42.104(c), petition correction, covers document upload errors.....	Book Page 2215
42.104(c), petition correction, granted motion preserves filing date of petition	Book Page 2216
42.104(c), motion to correct, granted. when petition stated correct claim number but recited wrong claim language.	Book Page 2217
42.104(c), motion to correct, denied, when petition lacked citations to certain evidence	

.....	Book Page 2217
42.104(c), motion to correct, denied, when lead counsel failed to file evidence	
.....	Book Page 2217
37 CFR 42.105 Service of petition.	Book Page 2218
Good faith attempt at service rule compliance.	Book Page 2219
Consequence of service rule non-compliance.	Book Page 2219
37 CFR 42.106 Filing date.	Book Page 2221
37 CFR 42.106(a) Complete petition.	Book Page 2221
Complete petition, procedural defect, filing date granted and date set to correct defect	
.....	Book Page 2221
Complete petition, substantive defect, (failure to specify challenge), no right to correct	
.....	Book Page 2221
Complete petition, technical failure of filing system, petition accorded date..	Book Page 2222
Complete petition, 35 USC 21 weekend holiday rule not applicable.	Book Page 2222
37 CFR 42.106(b) Incomplete petition.	Book Page 2222
Incomplete petition, receives no filing date.	Book Page 2222
Incomplete petition, failure to identify RPI.	Book Page 2223
Incomplete petition, statutory filing requirements.	Book Page 2223
37 CFR 42.107 Preliminary response to petition.	Book Page 2224
37 CFR 42.107(e) Disclaim Patent Claims.	Book Page 2225
37 CFR 42.108 Institution of inter partes review.	Book Page 2225
Contested issues of fact.	Book Page 2225
Reasonable likelihood, lack of secondary considerations evidence in petition	
.....	Book Page 2225
37 CFR 42.120 Patent owner response.	Book Page 2226
P 42.120(a), scope, patent owner response may challenge standing.	Book Page 2226
37 CFR 42.121 Amendment of the patent.	Book Page 2226
1. Contingent Motions to Amend.	Book Page 2227
2. Burden of Persuasion.	Book Page 2227
3. Reasonable Number of Substitute Claims.	Book Page 2227
4. Respond to a Ground of Unpatentability Involved in the Trial.	Book Page 2228
5. Scope of the Claims.	Book Page 2228
a. No enlargement.	Book Page 2229
b. No new matter	Book Page 2229
6. Claim Listing.	Book Page 2230
7. Default Page Limits and Submitted Evidence.	Book Page 2230
8. Duty of Candor in connection with a proposed amendment.	Book Page 2230
37 CFR 42.122 Multiple proceedings.	Book Page 2231
37 CFR 42.123 Filing of supplemental information.	Book Page 2231
Motion to submit supplemental information, guiding principle.	Book Page 2231
Supplemental information should not be filed with the motion.	Book Page 2232
Motion to submit supplemental information, burden of proof and required showings	

.....	Book Page 2232
Motion to submit supplemental information, for the purpose of confirming evidence is prior art.....	Book Page 2232
Motion to submit supplemental information, for the purpose of confirming evidence is both admissible and prior art.	Book Page 2233
Motion to submit supplemental information, prior to institution, denied.....	Book Page 2233
Motion to submit supplemental information, to bolster challenges in the petition, denied.....	Book Page 2233
.....	Book Page 2233
Motion to submit supplemental information, to submit Markman briefs, Joint Claim Constructions, orders on claim construction, granted.	Book Page 2234
Motion to submit supplemental information, in response to objections to evidence, denied.....	Book Page 2235
.....	Book Page 2235
37 CFR 42.123(b) -Late submission of supplemental information.	Book Page 2235
Motion to submit supplemental information, of information previously unavailable, granted.....	Book Page 2235
.....	Book Page 2235
Subpart C—Post Grant Review (42.200 to 42.224)	Book Page 2236
37 CFR 42.200 Procedure; pendency.....	Book Page 2236
37 CFR 42.201 Who may petition for a post-grant review.	Book Page 2236
37 CFR 42.202 Time for filing.	Book Page 2236
37 CFR 42.203 Post-grant review fee.	Book Page 2237
37 CFR 42.204 Content of petition.	Book Page 2237
37 CFR 42.205 Service of petition.	Book Page 2237
37 CFR 42.206 Filing date.....	Book Page 2237
37 CFR 42.207 Preliminary response to petition.....	Book Page 2238
Instituting Post-Grant Review.	Book Page 2238
42.208 Institution of post-grant review.	Book Page 2238
42.220 Patent owner response.	Book Page 2238
42.221 Amendment of the patent.....	Book Page 2238
42.222 Multiple proceedings and Joinder.	Book Page 2238
42.223 Filing of supplemental information.	Book Page 2238
42.224 Discovery.....	Book Page 2238
Subpart D—Transitional Program for Covered Business Method Patents (42.300 to 42.304)	Book Page 2238
.....	Book Page 2238
37 CFR 42.300 Procedure; pendency.....	Book Page 2239
37 CFR 42.301 Definitions.	Book Page 2239
Burden of Proof whether the patent is a CBM patent.....	Book Page 2239
37 CFR 42.301(a) "financial product or service".....	Book Page 2240
42.301(a), specification describes a financial product or service application..	Book Page 2240
42.301(a), assertion of patent against a financial institution.....	Book Page 2240
37 CFR 42.301(a) "except that the term does not include patents for technological inventions"	

.....	Book Page 2241
37 CFR 42.301(b) Technological Invention.	Book Page 2241
42.301(b), technological invention, requires the satisfaction of <i>both</i> prongs. .	Book Page 2242
42.301(b), examples of claims that do not define technological inventions. . .	Book Page 2242
42.301(b) "claimed subject matter as a whole".	Book Page 2243
42.301(b) "recites a technological feature that is novel and unobvious over the prior art"	
.....	Book Page 2244
42.301(b), showing claimed elements were known.	Book Page 2244
42.301(b), showing normal, expected, or predictable result of a combination	
.....	Book Page 2245
42.301(b), showings failure due to mis-characterizing claims.	Book Page 2245
42.301(b), failure to address all claim elements.	Book Page 2245
37 CFR 42.301(b) "solves a technical problem using a technical solution". . . .	Book Page 2246
42.301(b), showing lack of support for claim is insufficient to show lack of technical problem	
or solution.	Book Page 2247
42.301(b), lack of persuasive reasoning and expert testimony of no technological invention	
.....	Book Page 2248
37 CFR 42.302 Who may petition for a covered business method patent review	
.....	Book Page 2248
37 CFR 42.302(c)..	Book Page 2250
42.303 Time for filing.	Book Page 2250
42.304 Content of petition.	Book Page 2250
Subpart E—DERIVATION (42.400 to 42.412).	Book Page 2250
37 CFR 42.400 Procedure; pendency.	Book Page 2250
37 CFR 42.401 Definitions.	Book Page 2250
37 CFR 42.402 Who may file a petition for a derivation proceeding.	Book Page 2251
37 CFR 42.403 Time for filing.	Book Page 2251
37 CFR 42.404 Derivation fee.	Book Page 2251
37 CFR 42.405 Content of petition.	Book Page 2251
42.405(a)(2) showing one claim is substantially the same as the respondent's claimed	
invention, and the invention disclosed to the respondent.	Book Page 2251
42.405(a)(2)(i) "two-way analysis" applies to a claim of petitioner and claim of respondent	
.....	Book Page 2252
42.405(a)(2)(ii) "one-way" analysis applies to claim of petitioner and invention disclosed to	
respondent.	Book Page 2252
When petitioner's claim is relied upon as the "invention disclosed to the respondent"	
.....	Book Page 2252
37 CFR 42.405(b)(2) demonstrate derivation.	Book Page 2252
405(b)(2), petition must show prior conception of disclosed invention, not mere prior	
possession.	Book Page 2252
405(b)(3)(i) showing why respondents claim is obvious or anticipated (one-way test) in view	

of the	Book Page 2253
disclosed invention..	Book Page 2253
42.405(b)(3), definition, derived invention..	Book Page 2254
42.405(b)(2)(ii) and 42.405(b)(3)(i) "P to D and the D to R analysis are not aligned"	Book Page 2254
37 CFR 42.405(c) Sufficiency of showing.	Book Page 2254
37 CFR 42.406 Service of petition.	Book Page 2255
37 CFR 42.407 Filing date..	Book Page 2255
37 CFR 42.408 Institution of derivation proceeding.	Book Page 2255
37 CFR 42.409 Settlement agreements.	Book Page 2255
37 CFR 42.410 Arbitration.	Book Page 2255
37 CFR 42.411 Common interests in the invention..	Book Page 2255
37 CFR 42.412 Public availability of Board records..	Book Page 2255

America Invents Act (AIA), Public Law 112-29 - Selected uncodified provisions

.....	Book Page 2255
AIA, Public Law 112-29, sec. 3(n)(1), 125 Stat. 293 - Pre-Post AIA applicability	Book Page 2255
AIA, Public Law 112-29, sec. 3(n)(2), 125 Stat. 293 Residual Interference Jurisdiction	Book Page 2256
AIA, Public Law 112-29, sec. 6(f), 125 Stat. 284 - PGR applicability.	Book Page 2256
AIA, Public Law 112-29, sec. 18, 125 Stat. 284 - CBM enactment and sunset. .	Book Page 2257
AIA Sec. 18(a)(1)(A) except for 321(c), 325(b), (e)(2), and (f), PGR law applies to CBMs	Book Page 2258
AIA Sec. 18(a)(1)(E) - The Director may institute a transitional proceeding only for a patent that is a covered business method patent. (As amended by HR 6621, Public Law 112-274 enacted Jan. 14, 2013.).	Book Page 2259
Statutory construction of "a patent that claims".	Book Page 2259
Statutory construction of "a financial product or service".	Book Page 2260
AIA Sec. 18(a)(1)(B) "sued for infringement"..	Book Page 2261
Federal Circuit has jurisdiction to review.	Book Page 2261
Sued for infringement applies to Federal Court of Claims suits.	Book Page 2262
AIA Sec. 18(a)(1)(C) limitation on pre-AIA prior art, excluding 102(e) prior art	Book Page 2263
AIA Sec. 18(b)(1) "relating to a transitional proceeding for that patent," refers only to instituted PTAB proceedings.	Book Page 2263
AIA Sec. 18(a)(1)(E) - The PTAB can only invalidate a patent in a CBM proceeding if the patent is a "covered business method patent".	Book Page 2264
AIA Sec. 18(b)(1)(A)-(D) - The four separate factors listed in the statute must be weighed individually in a stay decision.	Book Page 2265
AIA Sec. 18(b)(1)(A)-(D) - Factors that are improper to consider in a stay decision	Book Page 2265

AIA Sec. 18(b)(1)(A) "simplify ... and streamline" factor.....	Book Page 2266
AIA Sec. 18(b)(1)(B) "discovery and ... trial date" factor.	Book Page 2267
AIA Sec. 18(b)(1)(C) "prejudice ... clear tactical advantage" factor.	Book Page 2268
AIA Sec. 18(b)(1)(D) "burden of litigation" factor.	Book Page 2268
AIA Sec. 18(b)(2) "review may be de novo" of the stay decision.	Book Page 2269
AIA Sec. 18(d)(1) "financial product or service".....	Book Page 2270
Disclaimer of CBM claims, and standing.	Book Page 2272
AIA Sec. 18 - 101 law.	Book Page 2273

Part IV—Patent Cooperation Treaty (Sections 361 to 376)..... [Book Page 2276](#)

Chapter 35— Definitions (Section 351). [Book Page 2276](#)

35 USC 351 Definitions.....	Book Page 2276
35 USC Chapter 36— International Stage (Sections 361 to 368).	Book Page 2277
35 USC 361 Receiving Office.	Book Page 2277
35 USC 363 International application designating the United States: Effect. ...	Book Page 2277
35 USC 364 International stage: Procedure.....	Book Page 2277
35 USC 365 Right of priority; benefit of the filing date of a prior application. ...	Book Page 2277
35 USC 368 Secrecy of certain inventions; filing international applications in foreign countries	Book Page 2278

35 USC Chapter 37— National Stage (sections 371 to 376)..... [Book Page 2278](#)

35 USC 371 - National stage: Commencement.	Book Page 2278
371(b) - Date of national stage commencement.	Book Page 2280
35 USC 371(f) - Express request	Book Page 2280
35 USC 372 National stage: Requirements and procedure.	Book Page 2280
35 USC 374 Publication of international application.	Book Page 2281
35 USC 375 Patent issued on international application: Effect.....	Book Page 2281

**Part V—The Hague Agreement Concerning International Registration of Industrial Designs
(sections 381 to 390).** [Book Page 2281](#)

35 USC Chapter 38— International Design Applications (sections 381 to 390

.....	Book Page 2281
35 USC 393 - Non-Resident Patentee; Service and Notice	Book Page 2281
35 USC 381 Definitions.....	Book Page 2281
35 USC 382 Filing international design applications.	Book Page 2282
35 USC 385 Effect of international design application.	Book Page 2282
35 USC 386 Right of priority.....	Book Page 2282
35 USC 387 Relief from prescribed time limits.	Book Page 2283
35 USC 388 Withdrawn or abandoned international design application.....	Book Page 2283
35 USC 389 Examination of international design application.....	Book Page 2283
35 USC 390 Publication of international design application.....	Book Page 2284

The publication under the treaty of an international design application designating the United

States shall be deemed a publication under section 122(b). (As amended in 2015.)

..... [Book Page 2284](#)

Title 42—The Public Health And Welfare. [Book Page 2284](#)

42 USC Chapter 6a— Public Health Service (sections 201 to 300mm-52). . . . [Book Page 2284](#)

SUBCHAPTER II—GENERAL POWERS AND DUTIES (sections 241 to 2801-3)

..... [Book Page 2284](#)

Part F—Licensing of Biological Products and Clinical Laboratories (sections 262 to 263a-7)

..... [Book Page 2284](#)

Subpart 1—Biological Products (sections 262 to 263). [Book Page 2284](#)

42 USC 262 - Regulation of biological products..... [Book Page 2284](#)

42 USC 262(a) Biologics license..... [Book Page 2284](#)

42 USC 262(i) - "Biological product" defined.. [Book Page 2284](#)

42 USC 262 (j) Application of Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. [Book Page 2285](#)

42 USC 262(k) Licensure of biological products as biosimilar or interchangeable
..... [Book Page 2285](#)

42 USC 262(k)(1) In general. [Book Page 2285](#)

42 USC 262(k)(5) General rules. [Book Page 2285](#)

42 USC 262(k)(6) Exclusivity for first interchangeable biological product. [Book Page 2286](#)

42 USC 262(k)(7) Exclusivity for reference product..... [Book Page 2286](#)

42 USC 262(l) Patents. [Book Page 2286](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1) Confidential access to subsection (k) application.. [Book Page 2286](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(A) Application of paragraph..... [Book Page 2287](#)

 Summary of exclusivity provided by the BPCIA. [Book Page 2287](#)

 Summary of the patent dispute resolution process provided by the BPCIA. . . [Book Page 2287](#)

 BPCIA does not provide right to manufacturer to force applicant to produce application and
 manufacturing information. [Book Page 2288](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(B) In general..... [Book Page 2288](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(C) Limitation on disclosure. [Book Page 2289](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(D) Use of confidential information. [Book Page 2289](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(E) Ownership of confidential information..... [Book Page 2289](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(F) Effect of infringement action..... [Book Page 2289](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(G) Rule of construction. [Book Page 2290](#)

42 USC 262(l)(1)(H) Effect of violation. [Book Page 2290](#)

42 USC 262(l)(2)(A) - Patents..... [Book Page 2290](#)

42 USC 262(l)(2) - Subsection (k) application information [Book Page 2290](#)

42 USC 262(l)(2)(A) - Providing copy of the submitted application to the reference product
sponsor..... [Book Page 2290](#)

42 USC 262(l)(3) List and description of patents. [Book Page 2291](#)

42 USC 262(l)(4) Patent resolution negotiations..... [Book Page 2292](#)

42 USC 262(l)(5) Patent resolution if no agreement..... [Book Page 2292](#)

42 USC 262(l)(5)(A) Number of patents.	Book Page 2292
42 USC 262(l)(5)(B) Exchange of patent lists.	Book Page 2293
42 USC 262(l)(5)(B)(i) In general.	Book Page 2293
42 USC 262(l)(5)(B)(ii) Number of patents listed by reference product sponsor	Book Page 2293
42 USC 262(l)(6) Immediate patent infringement action.	Book Page 2293
42 USC 262(l)(7) Newly issued or licensed patents.	Book Page 2293
42 USC 262(l)(8) Notice of commercial marketing and preliminary injunction.	Book Page 2294
42 USC 262(l)(9) Limitation on declaratory judgment action.	Book Page 2295
42 USC 262(l)(9)(A) Subsection (k) application provided.	Book Page 2295
42 USC 262(l)(9)(B) Subsequent failure to act by subsection (k) applicant.	Book Page 2295
42 USC 262(l)(9)(C) Subsection (k) application not provided	Book Page 2295
42 USC 262(n) Date of approval in the case of recommended controls under the CSA	Book Page 2296
42 USC Chapter 23, Division A—Atomic Energy (sections 2011 to 2296b-7)	Book Page 2296
42 USC 2014 Definitions.	Book Page 2296
42 USC 2182: Inventions conceived during Commission contracts; ownership; waiver; hearings	Book Page 2296
Invention made “in the course of” a contract.	Book Page 2296
Invention made “under” a contract.	Book Page 2296
Relationship between invention and contract.	Book Page 2296
State Law.	Book Page 2297
Preemption of state tort claims based upon enforcing a patent.	Book Page 2297
Contract interpretation, the four corners rule.	Book Page 2297
Permitted use of confidential information.	Book Page 2297
Definition of a contract’s “subject matter”.	Book Page 2298
Covenant of good faith and fair dealing	Book Page 2298
Agreement to agree, enforceability.	Book Page 2299
Agreement with open terms, enforceability.	Book Page 2300
Contract interpretation, parol evidence rule.	Book Page 2300
Contract interpretation, the merger doctrine.	Book Page 2300
California employment law.	Book Page 2301
California Business and Professions Code § 16600.	Book Page 2301
New York state law, attorney charging lien on any affirmative recovery.	Book Page 2302
Pennsylvania state law, attorney retaining lien.	Book Page 2303
California state law, no common law attorney charging lien, contract must be explicit	Book Page 2303
Texas state law.	Book Page 2304
Texas, prevailing party status.	Book Page 2304

Copyright 2019, Rick Neifeld. All rights reserved. Last revised: March 6, 2021 (11:06pm)

Texas, Entitlement to attorneys fees under the TTLA.	Book Page 2304
Texas, prevailing parties under the TTLA.	Book Page 2304